



C. Regena

One of the ABC Publishing Companies
Greensboro, North Carolina

Copyright 1986, COMPUTE! Publications, Inc. All rights reserved.
Reproduction or translation of any part of this work beyond that permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the United States Copyright Act without the permission of the copyright owner is unlawful.

## Printed in the United States of America

## 10987654

ISBN 0-87455-041-6

The author and publisher have made every effort in the preparation of this book to insure the accuracy of the programs and information. However, the information and programs in this book are sold without warranty, either express or implied. Neither the author nor COMPUTE! Publications, Inc., will be liable for any damages caused or alleged to be caused directly, indirectly, incidentally, or consequentially by the programs or information in this book.

The opinions expressed in this book are solely those of the author and are not necessarily those of COMPUTE! Publications, Inc.

COMPUTE! Publications, Inc., Post Office Box 5406, Greensboro, NC 27403, (919) 275-9809, is part of ABC Consumer Magazines, Inc., one of the ABC Publishing Companies, and is not associated with any manufacturer of personal computers. Amiga is a trademark of Commodore-Amiga, Inc.

## Contents

A Foreword ..... v
Preface ..... vii

1. Getting Started ..... 1
2. PRINT Statements ..... 15
3. Random Numbers ..... 25
4. Interactive Programming ..... 31
5. Program Transfer ..... 39
6. Arrays and DATA Statements ..... 57
7. Menus, Windows, and the Mouse ..... 77
8. Graphics ..... 87
9. Music, Sounds, and Speech ..... 103
10. Built-In Functions ..... 119
11. Educational Programming ..... 131
12. Miscellaneous Techniques ..... 159
13. Debugging ..... 171
14. Sample Programs ..... 177
Index ..... 197
7 Disk Coupon ..... 199

## Foreword

Elementary Amiga BASIC is a complete primer in the fundamentals of BASIC programming. Whether you are just starting to program or have worked with BASIC on another computer, you'll find all the commands, statements, and techniques you will need for effective programming on the Amiga. Every aspect of Amiga BASIC is demonstrated, with plenty of practical example programs which you can type in and use or modify to meet your own needs.

You will learn to use the powerful features of Commodore's versatile 16 -bit computer to create your own screens and windows, create and display menus, display text, and control the mouse in order to exploit the Amiga's sophisticated screen display capabilities.

You will learn to create colorful graphics in several modes, including sprites and animated objects. And controlling the Amiga's advanced sound chips from BASIC, you will be able to create sound effects, compose and play music, and program the computer to speak in different voices and ac-cents-even to speak a foreign language.

Elementary Amiga BASIC also offers a solid grounding in educational programming, providing a wide variety of easy-tounderstand, interactive programs which can be used in the classroom or at home by students of all ages.

> All the programs in this book are ready to type in and run. If you prefer not to type in the programs, however, you can order a disk which includes the programs in the book. Call toll-free $1-800-346-6767$ (in New York, call $212-887-8525$ ) or use the coupon found in the back of this book.

## Preface

I appreciate the opportunity to try BASIC programming on another computer. It's fun to experiment with new commands and new features. The main purpose of this book is to help you enjoy your Amiga computer by making it do what you want it to do. I hope to give you explanations of how Amiga BASIC works and to get you started on your own programming. I have tried to include a variety of programs illustrating the versatility of the Amiga. Feel free to take these programming ideas and customize them for your own needs.

I offer a special thanks to Stephen Levy, Editor of COMPUTE! Books, who tried to keep me informed about the Amiga as the computer and the BASIC programming language were being updated and revised. Thanks also to members of the COMPUTE! staff who helped make this book possible.

This book is dedicated to my baby son, Brett Lynn Whitelaw, who made his arrival the same week as my Amiga came. He has had to share his new life with the computer as I have been writing this book.
C. Regena

January, 1986

## Chapter 1 <br> 

## Getting Started

## Getting Started

In the few years since microcomputers were introduced, home computers have become more powerful and less expensive and much easier to use. It's possible to use a computer without knowing a thing about programming, because of the wide variety of ready-to-use application programs which only require you to select the program you want, load it, and run it.

However, to get the computer to do exactly what you want it to do, you may want to customize someone else's program or write your own. This book will teach you the fundamental skills necessary to program the Amiga in BASIC. I have included a variety of programs which you may type in and use as they are or modify to better fit your needs.

We will discuss the Amiga BASIC programming language that is packaged with your Amiga, so you won't need to buy anything extra to start programming. In addition, all of the instructions in this book will work without expanded memory or any extra peripherals.

If you already know how to program in BASIC for another computer, you will find that most Amiga BASIC commands are familiar, although the syntax of some may be slightly different and there are some new commands which give you an introduction to the Amiga's special graphics, sound, and speech features.

We can't possibly include everything here, of course, but COMPUTE! will be publishing other books and articles for more advanced programmers which will go into more detail for the Amiga's special features.

I will assume you have the Amiga BASIC disk and manual that came with your computer. The manual is a handy reference guide, containing descriptions and syntax of the available commands, and should be used along with this book.

## How to Load Amiga BASIC

To begin, you should sit at the Amiga, with the manual and this book both handy so that you can refer to them as you practice on the computer. Then follow these six steps to boot up, or start, your computer:

1. Turn on the monitor and Amiga.
2. At the Kickstart prompt, insert the Kickstart disk.
3. At the Workbench prompt, insert the Workbench disk.
4. When the disk drive light goes out and the screen shows the Workbench disk icon, insert the Amiga BASIC disk. Warning: Never remove a disk while the disk drive light is on.
5. Move the mouse arrow pointer onto the Amiga BASIC disk icon and press the left mouse button twice (called a doubleclick) to select and open this disk.
6. A window will appear. Move the pointer to the Amiga BASIC programming icon and select it by double-clicking the left mouse button.

The arrow pointer will change to the busy symbol and the disk drive light will go on as Amiga BASIC is loaded. Next, a blue screen appears with two windows. The main window is the Output window, in which you will see a statement about Commodore Amiga BASIC. When you run a program, the results appear on this window. At the right of the screen is a List window. When you have a program in memory, the listing appears in this window. While the program is running, this window disappears.

Figure 1-1. The Amiga Startup Screen


## Chapter 1

You are now ready to start programming. A vertical orange line (the cursor) will appear in the List window. As you type, the letters are displayed and the cursor moves along to the next position on the screen line. You start off in the List window because that's where you will be entering your programs.

## New Terms and Commands

Before we get too involved in programming, here are a few terms which you will be seeing a lot of. As you work your way through the book, you may want to flip back to this page to refresh your memory of what they mean.

REM is the keyword for REMark. This word allows you to put explanations or comments within a program. The computer will essentially ignore these statements. Examples:

## REM TITLE

200 REM Draw wheels
CALC: REM Perform calculations
END is a command to stop the program. This command is optional in a program because the computer will automatically stop when it finishes going through the instructions. Some programmers like to use END before subroutines so the computer won't accidentally execute subroutines and cause errors. A STOP command will also stop execution. Some computers require the END statement to save the program properly. In this book END is used as the last statement in each program so that you can tell when you have entered a complete program.

LIST shows a listing of your program on the List screen and is used in command mode (in the Output window). If you are in the Output window after a program has run, and you want to see the List window again, you may type the command LIST and press RETURN.

RUN tells the computer to execute the program in memory. One of the functions of a computer is that you can run a program as many times as you want and the computer won't mind.

CLS is the command to CLear the Screen (Output window). I often use this command near the beginning of a program to make sure the screen will be clear. The Amiga automatically clears the screen when a program is run, but
you would want to use this command if the program is repeated or if you want a clear screen between sections of a program.

NEW is the command to clear, or discard, the old program and get ready for a new program. In the Output window, type NEW and press RETURN. If you have a program in memory, a system message will appear asking if you want to save the program. Use the mouse to select your answer. After a NEW command, both windows clear.

Statements and commands. A statement is an instruction in the program. A command is a particular kind of statement which tells the computer to do something.

Logical line. A logical line is an instruction in the program. It may actually consist of several statements separated by colons.

Line numbering. Although most computer versions require that each program line start with a line number, Amiga BASIC does not. You may use numbers or alphanumeric labels to reference a line, although this is not necessary. Line numbers are treated as labels by the computer.

Labels. Using descriptive labels can make a program easier to understand. The label is a word followed by a colon, such as

## INIT: REM Initialize variables

You do not use the colon when you reference the line label in another part of the program, such as
GOSUB INIT
The familiar line numbers are used in this book to simplify the descriptions of what is happening in the programs. The numbers also make it a little easier to keep track of the lines as you enter the programs. Also, if you have the earlier version of ABasiC or are translating to a different version of BASIC, line numbers are required.

In computers that require line numbers, it doesn't matter what order you type the lines in; the computer will arrange the lines in numeric order. In Amiga BASIC, however, if you need to insert a line, you must move the cursor to the appropriate place in the listing and insert the line in its proper spot.

Constants and variables. Two more terms you'll hear a lot when you are programming are constant and variable. A constant never changes throughout the program. It may be a

## Chapter $\mathbb{1}$

numeric variable (such as $14,8.5,20$, and so on) or a string variable, which may contain characters other than numbers (such as JOHN or 123-4567).

A variable is a name that may have its value changed as the program is running. For example, a numeric variable may be SCORE, which initially starts at zero then increments by one each time a hit is made in a game. A string variable may be NAME\$, which starts with the value "CHERY", then is changed to "RICHARD", then later to "CINDY" as the program is run.

A string variable name ends with a dollar sign. A string may be the null string (it contains nothing and is represented as " "), or it may contain as many as 255 characters. All letters and numerals are valid in variable names, but the name must not be a reserved word (a command or keyword).

## What's a Program?

There are two ways to make the Amiga execute, or perform, commands. The simplest is to type a command in the Output window and press RETURN. The computer will execute that command immediately. But a computer program is a whole series of instructions which tell the computer what to do. To write a set of instructions without having the computer execute them as soon as you type them in, you need to be in the List window. The computer keeps track of the things you have entered and won't execute the instructions until you run the program.

There are two ways to run a program. One way is to move from the List window to the Output window by moving the mouse arrow to the Output window and pressing the left mouse button once. Type RUN, then press the RETURN key.

Another way is to use the menu options which are at the top of the screen. To make the menu selections appear, press the right mouse button, and you will see the main menu head-ings-Project, Edit, Run, and Windows. Holding the right button down, move the pointer to the Run menu. A secondary menu appears. Point to Start and release the button.

If you started with the cursor in the List window, it will return after the program ends. If the Output window was active (if the cursor was in that window), the List window will not reappear when the program is finished. To get the List window back, type LIST and press RETURN.

## Initializing a Disk

If your program is more than a few lines long, you won't want to type it in each time you use it. Instead, after it is typed in once, you can save it on a disk, then at any later time you can load it back in to run it.

To save a program, you first need an initialized disk. It's a good idea to have several initialized disks on hand while you're programming. If you prefer, you may save a program on the same disk that Amiga BASIC is on.

To initialize a disk:

1. Turn on the monitor and computer.
2. At the Kickstart prompt, insert the Kickstart disk.
3. At the Workbench prompt, insert the Workbench disk.
4. Select the Workbench disk icon by moving the mouse pointer to the disk icon and double-clicking the left mouse button. The Workbench window will appear.
5. Remove the Workbench disk and put in a new disk. An icon of a disk will appear with the label DF0:BAD.
6. Select the new disk by moving the arrow onto the disk icon and double-clicking the left mouse button. The white disk icon will change to black.
7. Press the right mouse button and move to the menu bar. The three menus are Workbench, Disk, and Special. Under Disk, select Initialize by releasing the mouse button when Initialize is highlighted.
8. You will see a message: Please replace volume Workbench in any drive. Take out the new disk and put in the Workbench disk.
9. This message then appears: Please insert disk to be initialized in drive 0 . Take out the Workbench disk and put in the new disk. Move the mouse so the arrow points to Continue and press the left mouse button.
10. When you see OK to initialize disk in drive 0 (all data will be erased)?, move the arrow to Continue and press the left mouse button. The drive light will go on and the disk label on the disk icon will change to DF0:BUSY. When the light goes off, the label changes to EMPTY and you are finished.

To give your new disk a meaningful name, move the arrow to the Empty disk icon and press the left mouse button. The disk turns black. Holding the right mouse button
down, move to the menu bar. Under the Workbench menu choose Rename by releasing the right mouse button when Rename is highlighted. A line will appear with the title Empty in it. Move the arrow to the box and press the left mouse button. Use the arrow keys and BACK SPACE key to erase Empty, then type the name of your new disk. Press RETURN when you are finished typing, and the disk is renamed.

## Saving Programs

To save a program on the same disk that you used to load Amiga BASIC, move the cursor to the Output window by moving the arrow to the left screen and pressing the left mouse button. Choose a title for your program and then type the command

## SAVE "TITLE"

and press RETURN. Notice that the title of the window changes from BASIC to the title you have chosen. Once you have a title on the window and want to save another copy, you just need the command SAVE.

To save the program on a different initialized disk, use the command

## SAVE "DF0:TITLE"

DFO: tells the computer to save the program onto whatever disk is in the disk drive. Without DF0: the computer will ask you for the disk that you used to load Amiga BASIC.

Another way to save the program is to use the mouse to move to the menu bar. Under the Project menu, select Save. A message box appears and asks you to type in a title.

## Loading a Program

To use a program that has previously been saved, you need to load the program. Put the cursor in the Output window. Using the name of the particular program you want, enter the command

## LOAD "NAME"

If the program is on a different disk from the one you used to load Amiga BASIC, use the command

[^0]If the program you want is filed in a drawer, first specify demonstration programs in the BasicDemos drawer when you are in Amiga BASIC, use the command
LOAD "BasicDemos/music"
or, if it is on a different disk,
LOAD "DF0:BasicDemos/music"
When the program is successfully loaded, the listing will appear in the List window.

It is also possible to load and automatically run a program from a disk by using the command
RUN "NAME"
or

## RUN "DFO:NAME"

However, the List window does not clear if this method is used.

## Typing In Programs

Computers are rather particular in understanding what you type, so the programs in this book must be entered exactly as listed in order to work properly.

To be safe, you should save your work at last every halfhour or so. A power failure or a brownout (a dip in voltage) can be frustrating if it causes you to lose many hours of work. It's also a good idea to use two separate disks as you save your programs. It is possible for a power failure to occur (or the machine to lock up) right as you are saving a new version over another version, and both versions will be lost. If that happens, you will be very glad to have a backup copy on another disk.

The programs in this book have short lines, even though a program line may contain as many as 255 characters and may have several statements separated by colons. Many program lines could be combined, but shorter lines are easier to read. If you decide to use longer lines, you should know that as you are typing a longer line, the List screen will scroll to the right. You can use the arrow keys to scroll the display left and right in order to see a different section of the long line.

Be especially careful in typing DATA statements. Read the numbers carefully and be sure to copy the commas exactly as they are shown.

## Editing Features

To make changes in your programs, you activate the List window by moving the mouse pointer to the window and clicking the left button. Then you use the arrow keys or the mouse to position the cursor in the line you want to change. To use the mouse, simply move the arrow to where you want the cursor to be, then press the left button.

To insert characters, place the cursor in the desired position and start typing. For example, enter this program segment into the List window:

```
1\varnothing REM EDIT PRACTICE
2ø PRINT "HI"
30 A=3:B=4
4ø C=A+B:PRINT C
5 \varnothing \text { END}
```

Let's say you want to add $\mathrm{D}=5$ to line 30 . Move the cursor to the end of line 30 , right after the 4 . Now type : $D=5$

You do not need to press RETURN (doing so will insert a blank line). If you want to add another line, you may press RETURN to get the blank line and then start typing. For examaple, you may add a line:

35 PRINT D
by pressing RETURN after the 5 on line 30 , then entering line 35. You don't have to create the blank line first, but you may find it less confusing.

Now let's add something in the middle of a line. At line 20, add a name after HI inside the quotation marks. Place the cursor after the $I$ and before the closing quotation mark. Now type a space, then a name, such as LEWIS. Notice how the
rest of the line moves over as you type. Do not press RETURN. Line 20 should now look like this:

20 PRINT "HI LEWIS"
To delete a character, place the cursor to the right of the unwanted character, then press the BACK SPACE key. To illustrate, change HI in line 20 to HELLO. First, place the cursor right after the $I$ in HI. Press the BACK SPACE key to erase the I. Now type ELLO, and line 20 should look like this:
$2 \emptyset$ PRINT "HELLO LEWIS"
You also can edit a line by using the highlighting feature. Use the mouse to position the cursor at the point where you want to start editing. Keep holding the left mouse button down as you move it, and you'll notice that the background of the characters changes to yellow. Any characters in the yellow band will be changed. Release the left mouse button when you have highlighted all the characters to be changed. Next, type the correct characters. All the yellow characters will disappear.

If you make a mistake and highlight more characters that you mean to, you can cancel the highlighting by releasing the button and moving the pointer to another line. Click the left mouse button to shift the cursor out of the highlighted area, then start over by repositioning the cursor at the start of the characters you want to highlight.

Let's try an example. Change the name LEWIS in line 20 to DEAN. Use the mouse to move the arrow tip to the $L$ in LEWIS. Press the left mouse button to start the cursor at the $L$. Keep holding the left mouse button down and move the arrow across the name to the $S$-the name LEWIS will be in black letters with a yellow background. Now release the mouse button. Type a different name, such as DEAN. As soon as you press D, all of the yellow letters disappear, and you can finish typing EAN.

You may use this same method to change just one letter. For example, suppose you need to change DEAN to JEAN. Use the mouse to move the cursor to the $D$ in DEAN. Press the left mouse button and move it just slightly so only the letter $D$ is highlighted. Now release the mouse button and type the letter $J$.

You may use the mouse and the yellow highlighted areas to delete more than one character at a time as you do with the BACK SPACE key. Move the mouse to highlight all the characters to be deleted, then press the BACK SPACE key. For example, delete the word EDIT in line 10. Use the mouse to place the arrow at the $E$ in EDIT. Hold the left mouse button down while you move to the space after EDIT. Now release the mouse button and press the BACK SPACE key once. The line should now look like this:

## 10 REM PRACTICE

You may use this method to delete several lines. Let's say you want to delete lines 35 and 40. Move the mouse anywhere on line 35 and press the left mouse button. Holding the button down, move downward to line 40 . Notice that the whole two lines will turn yellow. Now let go of the mouse button. You may press either the RETURN key or the BACK SPACE key to get rid of both lines. If you use the RETURN key, you will get one blank line before line 50 .

## Figure 1-2. Using Highlighting to Edit Lines



Another way to delete several lines is to activate the Output window (move the arrow to the Output window and click the left mouse button). Now type the DELETE command with the specified line numbers or labels you wish to delete, such as DELETE 300-500, and then move back to the List window. This method is quick if you have to delete a range of lines which are not all showing on the screen at once.

## Chapter 2

## PRINT

Statements

## PRINT Statements

To get started programming, let's try a few PRINT statements. PRINT is a command to display something on the screen. If you want to print a message, simply put it in quotation marks:

```
PRINT "HELLO"
20 PRINT "I like to program."
PRINT "Bye for now."
```

When you run the program, the messages inside the quotation marks will be printed on the screen.

You can print actual messages enclosed in quotation marks, numbers, or variables (either string or numeric). Here are some example PRINT statements:

PRINT NAMES
PRINT 3
PRINT $5+8$
PRINT $x$
Try writing a program to print a message. Or you can try drawing pictures using symbols. Program 2-1 is an example.

## Program 2-1. Face

| REM FACE |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| CLS |  |
| PRINT |  |
| PRINT | "@@@@@@ |
| PRINT | "/ \" |
| PRINT | " |
| PRINT | " 00 |
| PRINT | " 1 |
| PRINT | "1 0 |
| PRINT | "\___/" |
| PRINT |  |
| END |  |

Unless you specify otherwise, each PRINT statement starts printing on a new line. In the examples above, each PRINT statement displayed one item per line. To print several items with one PRINT statement, the items must be separated by delimiters (semicolons or commas). Program 2-2 illustrates various forms of printing.

## Figure 2-1. Making a Face with PRINT Statements



## Program 2-2. Printing

```
10 REM PRINTING
20 CLS
30 PRINT "HELLO"
40 PRINT
50 PRINT "FIRST";"SECOND"
60 PRINT "THIRD ";"FOURTH"
70 PRINT "FIVE","SIX","SEVEN"
80 PRINT 7-5
90 END
```

Line 10 is a REMark stating the title of the program. Line 20 clears the screen, then line 30 prints one word. Line 40 prints a blank line. Line 50 illustrates that the semicolon prints the second item right after the first. If you want a space between two items, you need to put the space within the quotation marks, as in line 60 . Line 70 shows what happens when you separate items with commas-the next item starts in the next print region. Line 80 prints a numeric calculation.

## Formatting the Display

To get spaces in your printing or to line up the words and
 numbers into columns, you can use spaces within quotation marks, or you can use the TAB and SPC functions. TAB is like
a typewriter tabulator that indents to a certain column. TAB $(n)$ will start your printing in column $n$. SPC $(n)$ will print $n$ number of spaces before your next item.

A PRINT statement can contain several TAB and SPC functions. Program 2-3 is a short program that numbers the columns and illustrates the use of TAB and SPC.

## Program 2-3. TAB and SPC

```
1\varnothing REM TAB AND SPC
20 CLS
30 PRINT "1234567890123456789012345678"
40 PRINT TAB(5);"START"
50 PRINT TAB(8);"A";SPC(6);"B"
6 0 ~ P R I N T ~
7\varnothing END
```

Another useful formatting function is STRING\$, which is used to print several repeats of the same character along a line. The syntax is STRING $\$(n, c)$. The first value inside the parentheses is the number of characters you need, and $c$ is the ASCII value of the character (or the actual character within quotation marks). For example, STRING $\$(10,65)$ tells the computer to print a string of ten letter $A^{\prime}$ s-the ASCII code of $A$ is 65. Another way to write this is STRING $\$\left(10,{ }^{\prime \prime} A^{\prime \prime}\right)$.
"Tbird" is longer program that illustrates how to get a kind of low-resolution drawing by printing symbols. It illustrates delimiters between printed items, the TAB function to start printing in a certain column, the SPC function to print a number of spaces between items, and the STRING\$ function to print strings of characters.

## Program 2-4. Tbird

```
1\varnothing REM TBIRD
20 CLS:PRINT
3\emptyset PRINT TAB(2\emptyset);"mMMMMMm";SPC(7);"mMMMMm";SPC(9);"mMMMMMm"
4\emptyset PRINT TAB(17);"mMMMMMMMMMM";SPC(6);"<MMMMM";SPC(8);"MMMMMM
MMMMm"
50 PRINT TAB(14);"mMMМММММММММММММm";SPC(6);"MMM";SPC(6);"mMM
MMМММММММММm"
60 PRINT TAB(12);"आМММММММММММММММММММ";SPC(5);"MMM";SPC(4);"
 пМММММММММММММММММm"
7\emptyset PRINT TAB(10);"m";STRING$(54,"M");"m"
8\emptyset PRINT TAB(8);"mm";STRING$(57,"M");"m"
90 PRINT TAB(6);"mM m";STRING$(59,"M");"m"
1Ø\emptyset PRINT TAB(4);"mMM MM ";STRING$(19,"M");"YYMMMMMMMYY";S
TRING$(19,"M");" MM MMm"
11\varnothing PRINT TAB(8);"mM m";STRING$(18,"M");SPC(4);"MММММММ";SPC
(4);STRING$(18,"M");" Mm Mm"
```

```
12\emptyset PRINT TAB(6);"mM mMM आMMM MMMMMMMMM MMMMMMMMM M
MMMMMMMM MMMm MMm Mm"
130 PRINT TAB(9);"mMM mMM MM MMM";SPC(8);"MMMMMMMMM";SPC(8
): "MMM MM MMm MMm"
140 PRINT TAB(13);"mMM mMM mM";SPC(9);STRING$(11,"M");SPC(9)
;"Mm MMm MMm Mm"
15\emptyset PRINT TAB(11);"mM mMM M";SPC(10);"mMMMMMMMMMm";SPC(10
):"M Mm MMm"
160 PRINT TAB(15):"mM";SPC(18);"MMMMMMM";SPC(17);"M Mm"
170 PRINT
190 END
```


## Figure 2-2. The Thunderbird Drawn by Tbird Program



The LOCATE command provides a more efficient way to print at a certain place on the screen or to relocate the cursor (rather than printing blank lines and TABulating to a column). This command is of the form LOCATE $r, c$ where $r$ is the row number and $c$ is the column number of the starting position on the screen.

```
LOCATE 5,10:PRINT "MESSAGE"
```

starts printing MESSAGE in column 10 of the fifth row from the top.

You may wish to highlight your printing by using different colors. COLOR $f, b$ requires a foreground color $f$ and a
background color $b$, where $f$ and $b$ are numbers from 0 through 3. The default print color is COLOR 1,0 , or white on blue. The blue screen color is color 0 , white is 1 , black is 2 , and orange is 3 (without defining new screens and palettes). Try this sequence:

```
COLOR 2,1
PRINT "TRY THIS"
COLOR 3,2:PRINT "AND THIS"
COLOR 6,1:PRINT "Inverse"
COLOR 1,\varnothing:PRINT "bACK tO NORMAL"
```


## The PRINT USING Statement

PRINT USING is a handy statement to use when you want to format your printing. The Amiga BASIC manual lists all the different forms and options for printing numbers and strings. Program 2-5 illustrates different forms. In printing numbers, the number sign (\#) indicates the placement of a numeral.

## Program 2-5. Using

```
1\varnothing REM PRINT USING NUMBERS
2Ø CLS
30 A=123.456
40 B=75
50 C=.2
60 D=-1.35067
70 PRINT USING "###";A
80 PRINT USING "###";B
90 PRINT USING "###";C
1ø\emptyset PRINT USING "###";D
110 PRINT
12\emptyset PRINT USING "$$###.##";A,B,C,D
130 PRINT USING "$$###.##-";A,B,C,D
140 PRINT USING "+###.#";A,B,C,D
150 PRINT USING "###-";A,B,C,D
160 PRINT USING "########,.##";1234567.856#
170 PRINT USING "###.# A";A,B,C,D
180 PRINT
190 PRINT USING "**###.##";A
200 PRINT USING "**###.##";B
210 PRINT USING "**###.##";C
220 PRINT USING "**###.##";D
230 PRINT
24Ø END
```

Lines 30-60 assign numbers to the variable names A, B, C , and D . Lines 70-100 print the numbers using the format "\#\#\#", indicating a whole number of three digits. Notice that the numbers are rounded and right-justified.

Lines 120-130 illustrate how money amounts are printed. Two dollar signs precede the \# signs. Lines $140-150$ print signed numbers. In line 160, a comma before the decimal indicates that a comma is to be placed every three digits to the left of the decimal place. In line 170, another character, A, is printed after the number. It is included in the format within the quotation marks. Lines 190-220 have two asterisks before the number, which tells the computer to print leading asterisks in the field.

Program 2-6 illustrates some of the formatting options for strings.

## Program 2-6. Using Strings

```
10 REM PRINT USING STRINGS
20 CLS
30 A$="RICHARD"
40 B$="BOB"
50 C$="RANDY"
60 PRINT USING "!";A$,B$,C$
7ø PRINT USING "\ ";AS,B$,C$
80 PRINT
90 PRINT USING "\\";A$,B$,C$
100 PRINT
110 PRINT USING "\ \";AS
120 PRINT
130 PRINT USING "\\ "\
150 PRINT USING "\ \";C$
160 PRINT
170 PRINT USING "&";AS,B$,C$
180 PRINT USING "& ";A$,B$,C$
190 PRINT
2ø\emptyset PRINT USING "HIS INITIAL IS 1.";AS
210 END
```

Lines $30-50$ define string variables $A \$, B \$$, and $C \$$. The exclamation point in the PRINT USING format indicates that the first character only of a string is to be printed. Line 60 illustrates this. Line 70 also uses! to print the first character, but places a space after the character.

Two back slash marks indicate that the first two characters of a string are to be printed, as in line 90 . To print more than
 the first two characters, insert spaces between the back slashes. The total number of characters to be printed will be
the number of spaces between the back slashes plus two for the back slashes. Line 110 indicates that four characters are to be printed. Lines $130-150$ print ten characters each. Note that the strings are printed left-justified with spaces in the rest of the field.

The ampersand (\&) indicates printing the whole string no matter what length. Line 170 uses \& to print the three strings. If you need a space, it can be included. Line 180 uses \&, then a space to separate the names.

With PRINT USING, other characters included within the quotation marks will be printed as is, so you can combine a title with a format. Line 200 includes a message, then! to indicate printing the first character of the string $\mathrm{A} \$$.

## Setting Line Width

WIDTH is used to limit the number of characters that can be printed per line. If you do not specify a width and print a long sentence, you can see only part of it on the screen. The other part is printed, but you must scroll the display to see it. If you have a specified width within the 80 columns of the screen, the long sentence will be split and limited to the visible screen. The size of the characters is not affected. Try this example.

WIDTH 15
PRINT "THIS IS A SENTENCE OF MORE THAN 15 Characters."
WIDTH 40
PRINT "NOW TRY this sentence to see how it is printed."
Remember that you can use extra spaces in the printed messages so that words are not split. For example, in the last printed message above, insert an extra space before the word PRINTED.

## Chapter 3

## Random Numbers

## Chapter 3

## Random Numbers

One of the functions of a computer is to make random selections. Games may start with screens of random obstacles, quizzes may print questions in a random order, and school exercises may present random activities.

RND is the function to obtain random numers. RND returns a random decimal fraction between 0 and 1. To see an example, type PRINT RND in the Output window and press RETURN.

Usually, you will prefer to work with whole numbers. The INT function yields the INTeger, or whole number, portion of a number. For example, $\operatorname{INT}(3.21239)$ is the whole number 3. Since RND gives a decimal fraction, multiply it by a whole number, then take the INTeger portion. For example,

```
PRINT INT(10*RND)
```

will give a random number from 0 through 9 because RND is a fraction and INT takes the lower integer (it does not round the number). Now, if you really want random numbers from 1 through 10 instead of 0 through 9 , use INT( $10^{*}$ RND) +1 .

In throwing a die, you get numbers from 1 through 6, so the random number would be INT( 6 *RND) +1 . If you have two dice, the possibilities are 1 through 12, or INT(12*RND) +1 .

Try this program:

## Program 3-1. Random

```
10 FOR C=1 TO 5
20 PRINT INT(10*RND)+1
30 NEXT C
40 END
```

Run it several times. Notice that you always get the same sequence of random numbers. This can be helpful when you are testing a program, but most times you will want different numbers each time. The RANDOMIZE command is used to mix up the numbers (technically, this is called using a different seed). Add this line to the program and try running it again:

[^1]The RANDOMIZE command should come before the RND function in the program.

This time when you run the program, the computer asks you to enter a number. If you enter a different number each time, you will get a different sequence of random numbers.

Most of the time you will want your programs to generate random numbers without having the user enter numbers. The Amiga has a built-in TIMER which changes automatically. We can use TIMER as a way to get a different number each time the program is run. The randomization command becomes

## 5 RANDOMIZE TIMER

Program 3-2, "Simple Drill," illustrates a way to write a simple study drill. As you learn to program, you can improve this program by adding sound and graphics, or you can use the general idea to develop a drill about something else.

First, a random number from 0 through 9 is chosen and called A (line 130). Line 140 chooses another random number, $B$, from 0 through 9 . Line 150 prints the problem of $A+B$, and the next line asks the student for the answer. Line 170 compares the student's answer with the correct answer; then the computer either prints the correct answer or a message that the student was correct.

A scoring feature is added by using a counter SCORE which starts at zero and is incremented by one each time the answer is correct. A FOR-NEXT loop presents ten problems for the quiz. After the quiz, the student's score is printed. The student then has the option to try again.

## Program 3-2. Simple Drill

```
10
20 CLS
30 PRINT "ADDITION DRILL"
| PRINT:PRINT "You will see a problem."
5\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "Type the answer and press <RETURN>."
6\emptyset PRINT:PRINT
70 PRINT "Press any key to start."
8\emptyset K$=INKEY$:IF K$="" THEN 8\emptyset
9Ø SCORE=Ø
10\emptyset FOR P=1 TO 10
110 CLS
12\emptyset RANDOMIZE TIMER
13\emptyset A=INT(10*RND)
140 B=INT(10*RND)
150 PRINT A;"+";B;
160 INPUT "= ",T
```

```
17\emptyset IF T=A+B THEN 2ø\emptyset
180 PRINT:PRINT "NO, THE TOTAL IS";A+B
190 GOTO 22Ø
2øø PRINT:PRINT "CORRECT!"
210 SCORE=SCORE+1
22Ø PRINT:PRINT "PRESS <RETURN>"
230 K$=INKEY$:IF K$="" THEN 230
240 IF ASC(K$)<>13 THEN 230
25\emptyset NEXT P
260 CLS
27Ø PRINT "YOUR SCORE WAS"
28\emptyset PRINT SCORE;"CORRECT"
290 PRINT "OUT OF 10 PROBLEMS."
30\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "TRY AGAIN? (Y/N)"
31Ø K$=INKEY$:IF K$="Y" THEN 90
320 IF K$<>"N" THEN 310
330 PRINT:PRINT "PROGRAM ENDED"
340 END
```

Outline of Simple Drill Program

| Lines | Explanation |
| :--- | :--- |
| 10 | REMark-title of program. |
| 20 | Clears screen. |
| $30-70$ | Print title and instructions. |
| 80 | Waits for student to press any key. |
| 90 | Initializes SCORE at zero. |
| 100 | Performs quiz of ten problems. |
| 110 | Clears screen. |
| $120-140$ | Randomly choose two numbers A and B. |
| 150 | Prints problem. |
| 160 | Receives student's answer. |
| 170 | Compares student's answer with correct sum. |
| $180-190$ | If answer is incorrect, print correct answer; branch. |
| $200-210$ | If answer is correct, print message; increment score. |
| $220-240$ | Wait for student to press RETURN key. |
| 250 | Goos to next problem. |
| $260-290$ | Clear screen; print score. |
| $300-320$ | Print option to try again; branch appropriately. |
| $330-340$ | End program. |

$$
\begin{aligned}
& U \\
& U \\
& U \\
& U
\end{aligned}
$$

## Chapter 4

> Interactive Programming

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \square \\
& \square \\
& \square \\
& \square \\
& \square
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
0
$$

$$
\square
$$

$$
\square
$$

## Interactive Programming

You can print all kinds of messages on the screen now, but eventually you will want the user to type something and the program to react to it. This is called interactive programming. One way we get a messsage into the computer within a program is by using INPUT. For example,

```
PRINT "TYpe a number"
```

INPUT N
The computer will print the message and then wait for the user to type a number and then press RETURN. The computer will assign that number to the variable called N . The variable with the name N is a numeric variable, so a number must be entered-no symbols or letters.

To accept a string, a string variable name (a variable name with a dollar sign at the end) must be used with INPUT, such as INPUT N\$. With a string variable, any kind of characters may be entered, and the variable $\mathrm{N} \$$ will equal whatever is entered.

You can use INPUT in a variety of ways in your program-ming-entering names and addresses for a file, entering numbers to figure a mortgage payment, entering answers to a math quiz, entering numbers to be played as a song, typing answers to a grammar quiz, and so forth.

In the previous example we used a PRINT statement to tell the user what to enter. The next statement was an INPUT to receive the answer. If you prefer, you can combine these statements using an input prompt. After the INPUT command, put your prompting message in quotation marks. Follow the last quotation mark with a semicolon, then the variable name:

INPUT "What is the answer";A
This method keeps the input cursor on the same line as the prompt message. The first method put the input on the next line. You could also print a message and put a semicolon
after the printed message, then use an INPUT command. Notice that a question mark is automatically printed.

```
PRINT "Enter a word.";
```

INPUT W\$
If you do not want INPUT to print a question mark, you can use a comma instead of the semicolon after the input prompt:

```
INPUT "The answer is ",A
```

Experiment to get used to the spacing involved.

## Illustrations of INPUT

Program 4-1 is a short interactive program that illustrates different ways to use INPUT. Line 30 asks a question, then line 40 receives a string variable. Line 70 uses an input prompt with a semicolon, then a numeric variable. Lines 110 and 120 use the input prompt with a comma.

## Program 4-1. Input

```
10 REM INPUT
20 CLS
30 PRINT "WHAT IS YOUR NAME?"
40 INPUT N$
50 PRINT "HELLO, ";N$
60 PRINT
70 INPUT "HOW OLD ARE YOU";A
8\emptyset PRINT A;"IS A GOOD AGE."
90 PRINT
1Ø\emptyset PRINT "NOW ADD TWO NUMBERS."
11\varnothing INPUT "FIRST NUMBER IS ",B
120 INPUT "SECOND NUMBER IS ",C
130 PRINT
140 PRINT "THE SUM IS";B+C
150 END
```


## Better Input Control

INPUT receives whatever the user types in before pressing the RETURN key-whether it is one character, several lines of characters, or nothing. With INPUT, it is easy for the user to cause errors by entering something the program is not expecting. INKEY\$ is a method of receiving input that is more controllable. INKEY\$ checks the keyboard to see if a key is
pressed. The character pressed is not printed on the screen unless the program specifies so with a PRINT command. Program 4-2 is an example of how INKEY\$ is used.

## Program 4-2. INKEY\$ Example

```
10 PRINT "Press a key."
```

$20 \mathrm{~K}=\mathrm{INKEY}: \mathrm{IF} \mathrm{K} \$=" \mathrm{TH}$ THEN 2も

30 PRINT K\$
40 END
Line 10 prints the message to press a key. Line 20 checks to see if a key $K \$$ is pressed. If no key is pressed, then $K \$$ will be the null string "" and the computer will branch back to the same line. Only if a key is pressed will the program continue. Line 30 prints the character generated by the keypress.

You may wait until the user presses a certain key before continuing:

## Program 4-3. Wait for a Certain Key

```
10 PRINT "Press the space bar."
2ø K$=INKEY$:IF K$<> " " THEN 2ø
3ø PRINT "Press the return key."
40 K$=INKEY$:IF K$<>CHR$(13) THEN 40
```

I often use INKEY\$ to get a response and ignore all invalid responses. For example, this routine, "Get a Number," will ignore all keys that are not numbers:

```
Program 4-4. Get a Number
1\varnothing PRINT "Press a number."
2\emptyset N$=INKEY$
30 IF N$<"|" OR N$>"9" THEN 2|
40 PRINT N$
```

Program 4-5 is a quiz about converting roman numerals and shows several types of interactive programming commands. The user may first choose converting from a roman
numeral to an arabic number, converting from an arabic number to a roman numeral, or ending the program. INKEY\$ is used to receive the choice, which must be a number from 1 through 3.

Line 370 receives a numeric answer using INPUT. Line 480 receives an INPUT string variable answer for the roman numeral. If an answer is incorrect, the correct answer is printed, then the user must press RETURN to continue the program. Lines 400-420 use INKEY\$ to wait for RETURN to be pressed; then another problem of the same type is printed.

## Outline of Roman Numerals Program

| Lines | Explanation |
| :--- | :--- |
| 20 | Clears screen. |
| $30-60$ | Print title. |
| $70-130$ | READ from DATA the roman numeral equivalents |
|  | for hundreds, tens, and ones. |
| $140-160$ | Print menu screen. |
| 170-200 | Receive choice and branch appropriately. |
| $210-310$ | Calculate roman numeral equivalent of random |
| 320 | number N. |
| $330-360$ | Branches for second choice. |
| Print problem. |  |
| 370 | Receives answer. |
| $380-390$ | If answer is incorrect, print correct answer. |
| $430-420$ | Wait for user to press RETURN. |
| $440-450$ | Prints message for correct answer. |
| $460-470$ | Present option for another problem; branch to menu. |
| 480 | Receives rem. |
| 490 | If answer is correct, branches. |
| $500-510$ | Print correct answer. |
| 50 | Branches to line 400. |
| $530-540$ | Clear screen and end. |

## Program 4-5. Roman Numerals

```
10 REM ROMAN NUMERALS
2\emptyset CLS
30 PRINT TAB(31);"*******************""
40 PRINT TAB(31);"* ROMAN NUMERALS *"
50 PRINT TAB(31);"*******************"
60 PRINT:PRINT
7\emptyset FOR C=1 TO 9
80 READ H$(C),T$(C),S$(C)
```


## Chapter 4

```
9Ø NEXT C
1\emptyset\emptyset DATA C,X,I,CC,XX,II,CCC,XXX,III
110 DATA CD,XL,IV,D,L,V,DC,LX,VI
12\sigma DATA DCC,LXX,VII,DCCC,LXXX,VIII
130 DATA CM,XC,IX
140 PRINT TAB(24);"CHOOSE: l ROMAN TO ARABIC"
150 PRINT TAB(33);"2 ARABIC TO ROMAN"
160 PRINT TAB(33):"3 END PROGRAM"
170 AS=INKEY$
180 IF A$<"l" OR AS>"3" THEN 170
190 RANDOMIZE TIMER
20\emptyset ON VAL(A$) GOTO 210,210,530
210 CLS:RS=""
220 N=INT(1999*RND)+1:NN=N
23\emptyset IF N<1\varnothing\varnothing\emptyset THEN 250
240 R$="M":N=N-1ØØ\emptyset
250 IF N<1ØØ THEN 28Ø
260 NR=INT(N/lø\emptyset)
270 R$=RS+H$(NR):N=N-NR*1\varnothing\emptyset
280 IF N<1\varnothing THEN 31Ø
290 NR=INT(N/10)
300 R$=R$+T$(NR):N=N-NR*10
310 IF N>0 THEN RS=RS+S$(N)
320 IF AS="2" THEN 460
330 PRINT "GIVEN THE ROMAN NUMERAL"
340 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT R$
350 PRINT:PRINT;PRINT
360 PRINT "WHAT IS THE CORRESPONDING NUMBER?"
370 INPUT A
380 IF A=NN THEN 430
390 PRINT:PRINT "THE NUMBER IS ";NN
40\emptyset PRINT&PRINT "PRESS <RETURN>"
416 E$=INKEY$
420 IF E$=CHR$(13) THEN 210 ELSE 410
430 PRINT:PRINT "CORRECT!":PRINT
440 PRINT&PRINT "ANOTHER PROBLEM?":PRINT
4 5 0 ~ G O T O ~ 1 4 0 ~
46ø PRINT "GIVEN THE NUMBER";NN
470 PRINT:PRINT "TYPE THE CORRESPONDING ROMAN NUMERAL."
480 INPUT ES:ES=UCASES(E$)
490 IF ES=R$ THEN 430
5ø\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "THE CORRECT NUMBER IS"
510 PRINT RS
52ø GOTO 40Ø
530 CLS
540 END
```

$$
\begin{aligned}
& U \\
& U \\
& U \\
& U
\end{aligned}
$$

# Chapter 5 

Program
Transfer

$$
\begin{aligned}
& U \\
& U \\
& U \\
& U
\end{aligned}
$$

## Chapter 5

## Program Transfer

The Amiga will execute the lines in a program in listed order unless the program tells the computer otherwise. In this chapter, we will look at several ways you can transfer control to a different place in your programs and discuss the advantages for doing so.

## The GOTO Statement

GOTO is a statement that tells the computer to GO TO a different line (as in GO DIRECTLY TO JAIL, DO NOT PASS GO). In Amiga BASIC, you can go to a line by specifying a line number or a line label. If you use an alphanumeric label, the label in the line must have a colon after it, but the GOTO statement does not use the colon after the label:
10 GOTO SAMPLE
SAMPLE: GOTO 10
You can transfer to a previous line, a later line, or even put the computer in a loop going to the same line.

## Program 5-1. GOTO



Program 5-1 does not print the words in the order shown in the program because the GOTO commands transfer to different lines. The arrows show how the program is executed.

This program does not end because the computer keeps going to line 90 . Press CTRL-C (Break) to stop execution.

Using GOTO to create loops can create lots of printing effects with short programs:

## Program 5-2. Loop

```
10 REM LOOP
```

```
2ø CLS
```

$3 \varnothing$ PRINT "HELLO"
40 GOTO 30
$5 \varnothing$ END

Keep in mind that GOTO commands can make a program hard to follow and less efficient. If you have to debug a program with many GOTO commands, you pretty much have to play computer to follow the logic, tracing each GOTO to the indicated line.

## FOR-NEXT Loops

The FOR-NEXT statement creates a loop that is executed a certain number of times, then the program continues.

## Program 5-3. FOR1

```
10 REM FORI
20 FOR T=1 TO 5
3ø PRINT "HI"
40 NEXT T
```

$5 \varnothing$ END

The variable T (use any name you wish) is a counter. Line 20 says to start T at the value 1 , then go until T is the limit of 5. Line 30 prints HI. Line 40 says NEXT T, which increments T by one. The computer checks to see whether T has reached the limit of 5 . If not, the program transfers to the statement directly following the FOR statement. This process continues until the limit is exceeded, then the program continues with the line after NEXT. In this example, T will be $1,2,3,4$, and 5

## Chapter 5

when HI is printed. When T is 6 , the loop finishes and the program ends.

Program 5-4 is another example of a FOR-NEXT loop.

## Program 5-4. FOR2

10 REM FOR2
$2 \emptyset$ FOR C=ø TO 9
30 PRINT C,C*C
40 NEXT C
50 END
The variable $C$ starts at 0 and goes to 9 . In this example, the counter is actually used within the loop.

The counter does not have to be incremented by one. You can specify a STEP size. Suppose you want to count by twos:

## Program 5-5. FOR3

```
10 REM FOR3
2\emptyset FOR N=\emptyset TO 1\varnothing STEP 2
30 PRINT N
40 NEXT N
50 END
```

The STEP size can be a fraction:

## Program 5-6. FOR4

```
10 REM FOR4
20 FOR X=1 TO 3 STEP . }
30 PRINT X
40 NEXT X
50 END
```

The STEP size can be negative, which would be decreasing the index:

## Program 5-7. FOR5

## 10 REM FOR5

$2 \varnothing$ FOR B=1ø TO $\varnothing$ STEP -1
$3 \varnothing$ PRINT B
40 NEXT B
50 END
Any of the numbers in the FOR statement can be variables. An example is

```
FOR X=A TO B STEP S
```

There is no limit to how long your FOR-NEXT loop is, but you do need to make sure there is a NEXT statement to correspond with each FOR statement. You can also have nested loops-again, make sure the FORs and NEXTs are matched.

## Program 5-8. FOR6

```
10 REM FOR6
20 FOR A=1 TO 3
30 FOR B=1 TO 5
4ø PRINT A;"*";B;"=";A*B
50 NEXT B
6 0 ~ P R I N T
70 next A
80 END
```


## Subroutines

If you want the program to perform the same series of steps in different places, there's no need to enter identical lines of code several times in the program. You can put the process in a subroutine and then use GOSUB to perform the routine each time you want it.

GOSUB is similar to GOTO except that GOSUB goes out to a subroutine, then returns. GOSUB is followed by a line number or line label, and when the program comes to the GOSUB statement, it will branch to the specified line, just as it

## Chapter 5

does with GOTO. However, with GOSUB the computer will remember where it branched from. When it gets to the command RETURN in the subroutine, it will branch back to the first line after the GOSUB statement.

Be sure that every GOSUB is matched with a RETURN. Otherwise, your program will stop running and an error message will be displayed. You can have GOSUBs within other GOSUBs-each RETURN branches back to the GOSUB it most recently executed.

Program 5-9 illustrates the use of subroutines by drawing dice. Five random numbers are chosen for dice, and the five dice are drawn. Subroutines are used to draw the dots. Lines 170-180 draw one dot. Lines 190-210 draw two dots. Lines 220-230 are the subroutine to draw three dots by first using the one-dot subroutine, then the two-dot subroutine.

Lines 240-270 draw four dots by first using the two-dot subroutine, then drawing the other two dots. Lines 280-290 draw five dots by using the four-dot subroutine (which in turn uses the two-dot subroutine) and the one-dot subroutine.
Lines 300-330 draw six dots by using the four-dot subroutine and then drawing two more dots.

## Program 5-9. Dice

```
10 REM DICE
20 CLS
30 X=30:Y=30:R=6
4\varnothing RANDOMIZE TIMER
50 FOR I=1 TO 5
60 D=INT(6*RND)+1
70 LINE (X,Y)-(X+80,Y+40),1,BF
8\emptyset ON D GOSUB 150,17\emptyset,20\varnothing,220,260,28\emptyset
90 X=X+120
100 NEXT I
110 LOCATE 15,20:PRINT "PRESS 1 TO TOSS"
120 LOCATE 16,20:PRINT "PRESS 2 TO END"
130 ES=INKEY$:IF E$="1" THEN 20
140 IF E$="2" THEN 32Ø ELSE 130
15\emptyset CIRCLE (X+4\emptyset,Y+2\emptyset),R,2
160 RETURN
17\emptyset CIRCLE (X+20,Y+1\varnothing),R,2
18\emptyset CIRCLE (X+60,Y+3\emptyset),R,2
19\emptyset RETURN
20ø GOSUB 150:GOSUB 170
210 RETURN
220 GOSUB 170
23\emptyset CIRCLE (X+20,Y+3\emptyset),R,2
24ø CIRCLE (X+6\varnothing,Y+1\varnothing),R,2
250 RETURN
260 GOSUB 220:GOSUB 150
27ø RETURN
```

```
28ø GOSUB 220
29ø CIRCLE (X+2\sigma,Y+2\sigma),R,2
30\emptyset CIRCLE (X+60,Y+20),R,2
310 RETURN
320 CLS
330 END
```


## Conditional Branching

Conditional branching is what makes a computer seem intelligent. Actually, of course, the programmer has to tell the computer what to do. IF-THEN statements direct the computer to branch a certain way if a certain condition is true. Amiga BASIC also allows ELSE, which directs a branch if the condition is not true.

The basic form is IF expression THEN clause ELSE clause, where expression is a numeric expression or a condition to be tested and clause can be either another BASIC command or a line number or label.

## IF SCORE $=10$ THEN 370

tells the computer to check whether the variable SCORE is equal to 10 . If so, the program branches to line 370 . If not, the program ignores everything after THEN and simply goes to the next line.

## IF SCORE $=10$ THEN 370 ELSE 180

will branch to line 370 if the expression SCORE $=10$ is true or it will branch to line 180 if the expression is false.

Commands also are allowed after THEN and ELSE, and there can be several commands separated by colons:
IF SCORE=10 THEN PRINT "YOU WIN":G=G+1:GOTO 470 ELSE GOTO Play
A numeric expression containing any of the arithmetic operators can be used, or string expressions can be compared. If a condition is false, the value of the expression is 0 ; if it is true, the value is -1 . These are acceptable expressions:

```
200 IF A THEN 250
```

IF N\$く>"ZZZ" THEN GOTO 5øø
IF LEN(PS)>3 THEN PRINT PS
500 IF $B / D<C * A$ THEN $A=A+1$
600 IF $\mathrm{X}-\mathrm{Y}$ THEN $\mathrm{Z}=10$ ELSE $\mathrm{Z}=5$

## Chapter 5

Logical operators also can be used. The words accepted are NOT, AND, OR, XOR, EQV, and IMP. (See your manual for a detailed discussion of these operators.) For example,

```
7øØ IF ASく"1" OR AS>"4" THEN 650
```

IF $A=1 \varnothing$ AND $N \$=" M$ " THEN PRINT N\$

## ON-GOTO and ON-GOSUB

ON-GOTO and ON-GOSUB are conditional transfer statements. They can take the place of several IF-THEN statements. Let's say the user has a choice, and then that choice is tested:

```
IF CH=1 THEN GOTO 1øøø
IF CH=2 THEN GOTO 2øøø
IF CH=3 THEN GOTO 300ø
IF CH=4 THEN GOTO 4øøø
```

Since the value of CH can be $1,2,3$, or 4 , an ON -GOTO statement can be used to write this sequence more simply:

ON CH GOTO 1øøø,2øøø,3øøø,4øøø
This statement says that, depending on the value of CH , the program is to branch to certain lines. If CH is 1 , go to the first line number; if CH is 2 , go to the second line number; and so forth.

ON-GOSUB is the same idea, but the program will go to a subroutine, then return to the next statement after the ONGOSUB call.

ON X+1 GOSUB 250,250,30ø,400,650
This statement checks the value of $X+1$. If it is 1 , the computer goes to subroutine 250; if it is 2 , GOSUB 250 ; if it is 3 , GOSUB 300; if it is 4, GOSUB 400; and if it is 5 , GOSUB 650.

## Applying What We've Learned

Program 5-10, "Math Competency," illustrates the use of program transfer in several forms. GOTO is used to branch past several lines in the program. FOR-NEXT loops are used to
read in data (more about DATA statements in the next chapter) and to print similar lines in some of the problems. GOSUB is used to call a subroutine that is used in several places. ONGOTO is used to branch to seven different lines after a choice from the main menu is made. IF-THEN statements are used in a variety of ways to print the problems.

This program presents problems which are similar to problems on a mathematics competency examination such as standard achievement tests. Although these tests are designed for high-school students, the mathematics are at an ele-mentary-school level. The problems involve addition, multiplication, and division.

Random names and numbers are used in the problems. The computer generates problems in word form, or story problems. If an answer is incorrect, the correct answer is given, usually with an explanation, and another problem is presented. If the answer is correct, the program continues or gives the student the option of having a similar problem.

## Figure 5-1. An Interactive Program-Math Competency



## Chapter 5

There are six basic types of problems:

1. Buying Items. A list of items and their prices is printed. What would it cost to buy all the items on the list? If you had a certain amount of money, which two items could you buy?
2. Sales Tax. If you buy a list of items with a certain sales tax rate, what is the total cost?
3. Earning Money. A person earns a certain amount per hour and works a given number of hours per week. What are the total earnings per week or for a given number of weeks?
4. Weekly Expenses. A list of expenses for one week is given. What is the total expense for the week? What would be the total for several weeks?
5. Saving Money. An item costs a certain amount of money. If a person saves for a given number of weeks, how much per week must be saved?
6. Averages. Several numbers in a category are listed. What is their average?
Lines 80 to 480 use DATA statements and READ statements in FOR-NEXT loops to define arrays which hold the possible names, number limits, and phrases for the problems. (Arrays and related commands will be covered in the next chapter.) The variable names have numbers which relate to the section of the program in which they are used. Each array of names has both girls and boys, and the subscripts are used later to determine whether the feminine or masculine pronoun is needed.

To determine prices for items, the minimum values are read in from the data, and the computer adds a random number within limits to that base minimum number.

PRINT USING is a helpful command to print money or to line up columns and to make sure zero amounts are printed in the columns.

Random numbers are used to choose the wording of the problems. Either different phrases in arrays are printed, or branching with IF-THEN statements determines the printing.

## Outline of Math Competency Program

```
Lines Explanation
    12-17 DIMension arrays for variables.
    20 Branches past subroutine.
    30-50 Subroutine to wait for student to press RETURN.
    60-70 Clear screen; print title.
    80-480 Define elements of arrays for possible names, num-
        bers, and phrases used in writing problems.
    480-610 Print main menu screen and branch.
    620-840 First problem for Buying Items.
    850-1160 Second problem for Buying Items.
1170-1400 Problem for Sales Tax.
1410-1610 First problem for Earning Money.
1620-1830 Second problem for Earning Money.
1840-2010 Third problem for Earning Money.
2020-2070 Print options; branch.
2080-2360 Problem for Weekly Expenses.
2370-2570 Problem for Saving Money.
2580-3200 Problem for Averages.
3210-3220 Clear screen; end.
```


## Program 5-10. Math Competency

```
1\varnothing REM MATH COMPETENCY
12 DIM Jl$(3,5),Jl(3,5,2),Nl$(6)
13 DIM T2$(4),B2$(4,4),B2(4,4)
14 DIM N3$(5),J3$(5),T3$(5)
15 DIM N4$(6),B4$(3),A4$(3,5)
16 DIM N5$(6),A5(3),B5(3),M5(3),F5(3)
17 DIM N6$(8)
20 GOTO 60
30 PRINT:PRINT "PRESS <RETURN>"
40 E$=INKEY$:IF E$<>CHR$(13) THEN 40
50 RETURN
60 CLS
70 PRINT TAB(7);"** MATH COMPETENCY **"
80 FOR A=1 TO 3:FOR C=1 TO 5
9\emptyset READ Jl$(A,C),Jl(A,C,1),Jl(A,C,2)
10\emptyset NEXT C,A
110 DATA PENCIL, 8,15,ERASER,2,10,NOTEBOOK, 35,99, RULER, 29,49
12\emptyset DATA PAPER,59,90,DOLL, 249,599,BALL,49,89,TRUCK,100,150,GA
ME,270,500
13ø DATA MODEL, 3ø\emptyset,7\emptyset\emptyset,CANDY, 20,5\emptyset,MEAT,123,425,FRUIT,24,50
140 DATA CHIPS,100,257,BREAD,100,179
150 FOR A=1 TO 6:READ Nl$(A):NEXT A
160 DATA Laura,Cindy,Chery,David,Randy,Brett
170 H$(1)="PENCIL AND ERASER"
180 H$(2)="BALL AND TRUCK"
190 H$(3)="CANDY AND FRUIT"
200 REM
210 FOR C=1 TO 4:READ T2$(C)
```

220 FOR A=1 TO 4:READ B2 ${ }^{2}(\mathrm{C}, \mathrm{A}), \mathrm{B} 2(\mathrm{C}, \mathrm{A}):$ NEXT A, C
230 DATA HARDWARE, HAMMER, 15, PLIERS, 3,SAW, 6,NAILS, 1
$24 \varnothing$ DATA CLOTHES,BELT, 4,TIE,5,SHIRT,6, PANTS, $2 \varnothing$
$25 \varnothing$ DATA TOYS,BALL, 1,CAR, 2,GAME,5,DOLL, 6
260 DATA SUPPLIES,PAPER,4,CLIPS,1,PENCILS,1,ENVELOPES, 2
270 REM
280 FOR A=Ø TO 5:READ N3\$(A), J3\$(A),T3\$(A):NEXT A
$29 \emptyset$ DATA Sam,doing odd jobs., Paul,Joe,mowing lawns.,Jack,Bob, tending children.
$30 \emptyset$ DATA Mark,Ann,running errands.,Jane,Sue,doing housework.
310 DATA Judy,Kim, delivering ads., Dawn
$32 \varnothing$ REM
330 FOR A=1 TO 3: READ N4\$(A), N4\$(A+3), B4\$(A)
340 FOR C=1 TO 5:READ A4\$(A,C):NEXT C
350 NEXT A
$36 \emptyset$ DATA Lena, Andy,is going to, Camp Beaver, Camp fee,Horse rid
ing
370 DATA Tennis lessons,Craft supplies,Laura,Bill,will atten d,Sports Clinic
$38 \emptyset$ DATA Tuition,Uniform fee, Equipment fee, Special events
$39 \emptyset$ DATA Jodi,John,will stay at,Logan Canyon,Camp fee
$4 \emptyset \emptyset$ DATA T-shirts,Activity fee,Supplies
410 REM
$42 \emptyset$ FOR C=1 TO 6:READ N5\$(C) :NEXT C
430 DATA Jenny,Angie, Chris, Brent, Grant, Chuck
44Ø FOR C=1 TO 3:READ A5\$(C),B5(C),M5(C),F5(C):NEXT C
450 DATA bike, $80,5,7$, stereo, $90,5,14$, computer, $10 \emptyset, 10,10$
460 REM
470 FOR C=1 TO 8:READ N6 (C): NEXT C
480 DATA Sue, Pat, Rita,June, Bob, Ron, Kent, Mike
490 REM
50ø PRINT:PRINT:PRINT "CHOOSE:"
$51 \emptyset$ PRINT:PRINT TAB(8):"1 BUYING ITEMS"
520 PRINT:PRINT TAB(8):"2 SALES TAX"
530 PRINT:PRINT TAB(8);"3 EARNING MONEY"
540 PRINT:PRINT TAB (8);"4 WEEKLY EXPENSES"
550 PRINT:PRINT TAB(8):"5 SAVING MONEY"
560 PRINT:PRINT TAB(8):"6 AVERAGES"
570 PRINT:PRINT TAB(8);"7 END PROGRAM"
580 RANDOMIZE TIMER
590 E\$=INKEY\$
6øø IF ES<"l" OR ES>"7" THEN 59の
61ø ON VAL(E\$) GOTO 630,118ø,1420,2ø9ø,2380,2590,321ø
620 REM BUYING ITEMS
630 CLS:PRINT "Given this price list:":PRINT
$64 \varnothing \mathrm{~A}=\mathrm{INT}\left(3^{*}\right.$ RND +1 ) : TP=ø
650 FOR C=1 TO 5: D=Jl (A,C,2)-Jl(A,C,1)
$660 \mathrm{P}=\mathrm{Jl}(\mathrm{A}, \mathrm{C}, 1)+\mathrm{INT}\left(\mathrm{D}^{*} \mathrm{RND}+1\right): T P=T P+\mathrm{P}: \mathrm{XX}(\mathrm{C})=\mathrm{P}$
$67 \emptyset$ PRINT TAB(4);Jl\$(A,C);TAB(2ø);
680 PRINT USING "\#\#.\#\#";P/1øØ:NEXT C
$690 \mathrm{~F}=\mathrm{INT}(2 *$ RND +1 )
700 IF $\mathrm{F}=2$ THEN 740
710 PRINT:PRINT "How much will it cost to buy all"
720 PRINT "the items on the list?"
730 GOTO 77ø
$740 \mathrm{~N}=\mathrm{INT}(6 *$ RND +1 )
$75 \emptyset$ PRINT:PRINT N1\$(N);" wants to buy everything on the"
760 PRINT "list. What would the total cost be?"
77ø INPUT "\$", X

## Chapter 5

```
780
790 RRINT: PRINT "ADD ALL FIVE NUMBERS.
8øØ PRINT "THE TOTAL IS ":
\(81 \varnothing\) PRINT USING "\$\#\#.\#\#";TP/1øØ
820 GOSUB 30:GOTO 63ø
830 PRINT:PRINT "CORRECT!"
840 GOSUB 30
850 CLS:PRINT:PRINT
860 FOR C=1 TO 5:PRINT TAB(4);Jl\$(A,C);TAB(2б);
87ø PRINT USING "\#\#.\#\#";XX(C)/1øø:NEXT C
880 PRINT
890 IF \(\mathrm{F}=1\) THEN PRINT "If you could only ";:GOTO 910
\(9 \emptyset \emptyset\) PRINT "If ";Nl\$(N);" could only ";
91ø IF A=1 THEN M=INT(5*RND+25):GOTO 940
920 IF A=2 THEN M=INT(36*RND)+239:GOTO 940
930 M=INT (18*RND+10ø)
940 PRINT USING "spend \(\$ \# \#\).\#\#"; M/100
950 PRINT "which of these pairs of items on the"
960 IF F=l THEN PRINT "list could you buy?":GOTO 99ø
970 IF N<4 THEN PRINT "list could she buy?":GOTO 99ø
\(98 \emptyset\) PRINT "list could he buy?"
990 R=INT(4*RND+1):PRINT:PRINT
100ø FOR V=1 TO 4:IF V=R THEN \(S \$(V)=H \$(A): G O T O 106 \emptyset\)
1010 X=INT(2*RND+4):S\$(V)=Jl\$(A,X):X=INT(3*RND+1)
\(1020 \mathrm{~S} \$(\mathrm{~V})=\mathrm{S} \$(\mathrm{~V})+\mathrm{C}\) AND "+J1\$(A,X)
1030 IF V=1 THEN \(106 \emptyset\)
1040 FOR Vl=1 TO V-l:IF S\$(V1)=S\$(V) THEN 1ølø
1050 NEXT V1
1060 PRINT CHR\$(64+V);" "+S\$(V):NEXT V
1070 ES=INKEYS:IF ES="" THEN 1ø7ø
1081 PRINT ES:IF ASC(ES)《>64+R THEN 1140
109ø PRINT:PRINT "CORRECT!"
11øø PRINT:PRINT "TRY AGAIN? (Y/N)"
1110 ES=INKEY\$:IF ES="Y" OR ES="Y" THEN 630
1120 IF ES<>"N" AND ES<>"n" THEN 1110
1130 CLS:GOTO 5øØ
1140 PRINT:PRINT "THE TOTAL OF THE TWO ITEMS MUST BE"
\(115 \emptyset\) PRINT USING "LESS THAN \$\#\#.\#\#";M/1ø®
1160 GOTO 11ØØ
1170 REM SALES TAX
1180 CLS
\(119 \varnothing\) A=ø:T=INT(4*RND+2)
\(12 ø \emptyset\) PRINT "Sales tax on the following items"
1210 PRINT "is";T;"per cent, or \(\$ . \varnothing " ; R I G H T \$(S T R \$(T), 1)\)
\(122 \emptyset\) PRINT "for each dollar spent."
1230 PRINT "What is the total cost?":PRINT
1240 I=INT(4*RND+1):PRINT TAB(5);T2S(I):PRINT
1250 FOR J=1 TO 4:P=B2 (I,J)+.25*(INT(4*RND))
1260 PRINT B2\$(I,J),:PRINT USING "\$\#\#\#.\#\#";P:A=A+P:NEXT J
1270 PRINT
1280 INPUT " TOTAL COST \(=\$\) ", B
1290 PRINT:TX=1+T/1ø0:TA=A*TX+.005
1300 IF ABS \((B-T A)<. \emptyset 1\) THEN 1360
1310 PRINT:PRINT "ADD COSTS FOR TOTAL."
1320 PRINT "PRICE OF ITEMS = ";:PRINT USING "\$\#\#\#.\#\#";A
1330 PRINT "MULTIPLY BY ";T/1øø;" FOR TAX, THEN ADD.":PRINT
1340 PRINT USING "TOTAL COST = \$\#\#\#.\#\#";TA
1350 GOSUB 3ø:GOTO 118Ø
1360 PRINT:PRINT "CORRECTl"
```


## Chapter 5



1950 INPUT "\$",D
1960 Dl=P*W:IF ABS (D-Dl) <. øø1 THEN $2 ø 10$
1970 PRINT:PRINT USING "MULTIPLY $\$ \# \#$ \#\#\# PER WEEK";
1980 PRINT "BY";W;"WEEKS."
1990 PRINT:PRINT USING "THE ANSWER IS \$\#\#\#.\#\#";Dl
2øøø GOSUB 3Ø:GOTO 184ø
$201 \varnothing$ PRINT: PRINT "CORRECT!"
2020 PRINT:PRINT "PRESS 1 TO TRY AGAIN"
2ø3ø PRINT TAB(7):"2 START 'EARNING MONEY'•OVER"
2040 PRINT TAB(7);"3 RETURN TO MAIN MENU SCREEN"
2050 E\$=INKEY\$:IF ES="1" THEN 1840
2060 IF ES="2" THEN $142 \emptyset$
207ø IF ES<<"3" THEN 2ø5ø ELSE CLS:GOTO 5øø
2080 REM WEEKLY EXPENSES
2090 CLS
$21 \varnothing$ I=INT ( 3 *RND+1)
2110 PRINT "Here are the expenses for one week at":PRINT A4\$(
I,1);".":PRINT
$212 \varnothing \mathrm{P}=1 \varnothing$ (INT (5*RND+1) $+4 \varnothing$
2130 PRINT A4 $(1,2)$;TAB (2Ø); :PRINT USING "\$\#\#.\#\#"; P:T=P
$2140 \mathrm{P}=.25$ *INT(12*RND+1)+2.75
2150 PRINT A4\$(I, 3);TAB(2Ø);:PRINT USING "\$\#\#.\#\#";P:T=T+P
$2160 \mathrm{P}=$. 5* $^{\text {INT }}\left(8^{*}\right.$ RND +1$)+1.5$
$217 \emptyset$ PRINT A4\$(I, 4);TAB(2б);:PRINT USING "\$\#\#.\#\#";P:T=T+P
$2180 \mathrm{P}=.5$ * $\operatorname{INT}(5 *$ RND +1$)+.5$
2190 PRINT A4\$(I, 5);TAB(2ø);:PRINT USING "\$\#\#.\#\#";P:T=T+P
22øø PRINT:INPUT "Total expenses for one week $=\$$ ", $D$
$221 \varnothing$ IF ABS (D-T) <. ØØ1 THEN $223 \varnothing$
$222 \emptyset$ PRINT:PRINT USING "ADD THE NUMBERS TO GET TOTAL $\$ \# \# \# \# \# "$
;T:PRINT
223ø W=INT (7*RND+2)
224б PRINT:PRINT N4\$(INT(6*RND+1));" ";B4\$(INT(3*RND+1));" ";
A4 ${ }^{(1,1)}$
$225 \emptyset$ PRINT "for"; ${ }^{(W}$; weeks. What will it cost?"
2260 INPUT "\$",D
$227 \varnothing$ IF ABS (D-W*T) <. $\varnothing \varnothing 1$ THEN $232 \varnothing$
$228 \emptyset$ PRINT:PRINT "MULTIPLY TOTAL EXPENSE PER WEEK"
$229 \varnothing$ PRINT "TIMES";W;"WEEKS."
23øø PRINT USING "\$\#\#\#.\#\# * \# = \$\#\#\#.\#\#";T,W,T*W
$231 \varnothing$ GOSUB 3ø:GOTO 209ø
2320 PRINT:PRINT "CORRECT!"
2330 PRINT:PRINT "TRY AGAIN? (Y/N)"
2340 E\$=INKEYS:IF ES="Y" OR ES="Y" THEN 209ø
2350 IF ES<>"N" AND ES<<"n" THEN 2340
$236 \emptyset$ CLS:GOTO 5øø
2370 REM SAVING MONEY
2380 CLS
239 (R6=INT(6*RND+1)
$24 \emptyset \varnothing$ PRINT N5\$(R6);" wants to buy a ";
2410 R3=INT(3*RND+1):PRINT A5\$(R3);"."
$2420 \mathrm{P}=\mathrm{B} 5$ (R3)+M5 (R3)*INT(F5 (R3)*RND+1)
2430 PRINT USING "It will cost $\$ \# \# \#$.\#\#.";
2440 IF R6>=4 THEN ES="he" ELSE ES="she"
2450 W=10*INT (4*RND+1)
2460 PRINT "If ";ES;" saves for"; ${ }^{\prime}$; "weeks,"
2470 PRINT "how much will "; N5 (R6)" need to save"
2480 PRINT "each week?": PRINT
2490 INPUT "\$",D:IF ABS(D-P/W)<.ø1 THEN 2530
25øø PRINT:PRINT ỤSING "TOTAL COST \$\#\#\#.\#\# DIVIDED BY \#\#";P,W

## Chapter 5

```
2510 PRINT USING "WEEKS = $###.##";P/W
252ø GOSUB 30:GOTO 238\emptyset
2530 PRINT:PRINT "CORRECT!"
2540 PRINT:PRINT "ANOTHER PROBLEM? (Y/N)"
2550 E$=INKEY$:IF ES="Y" OR E$="Y" THEN 2380
2560 IF E$<>"N" AND E$<<"n" THEN 2550
2570 CLS:GOTO 5Ø\emptyset
2580 REM AVERAGES
2590 CLS
260ø Z=INT(3*RND+1):T=\varnothing
2610 ON Z GOTO 262ø,2710,281ø
2620 PRINT "A bowling team had the following scores for one g
ame.":PRINT
2630 X=INT( 2*RND)
2640 FOR I=1 TO 4
2650 S=115+INT(40*RND):T=T+S
2660 PRINT N6$(I+X*R);TAB(8);S
2670 NEXT I
2680 PRINT:PRINT "What was the team's average score"
269ø PRINT "for the game?"
27ø0 N=4:F=10:GOTO 2910
271ø PRINT "A basketball team won the following"
2720 PRINT "number of games.":PRINT
273ø N=4+INT( 3*RND+1): Y=1983-N
2740 FOR I=1 TO N
275\emptyset S=5\emptyset+INT (2\emptyset*RND):T=T+S:Y=Y+1
2760 PRINT Y;TAB(9);S
2770 NEXT I
278\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "What was the average number of games"
2790 PRINT "per year the team won during these years?"
280ø F=6:GOTO 291ø
2810 PRINT "A fullback gained the following"
2820 PRINT "number of yards in several football games."
2830 N=4+INT(3*RND+1)
2840 FOR I=1 TO N
2850 S=60+INT(3|*RND):T=T+S
2860 PRINT TAB(5);S
2870 NEXT I
2880 PRINT:PRINT "What was the fullback's average"
289ø PRINT "number of yards gained per game?"
290ø F=1\varnothing
2910 A=INT(T/N+.5):PRINT
2920 C=INT(4*RND+1):ON C GOTO 2930,2960,3010,3050
2930 PRINT "A ";A
2940 FOR I=1 TO 3:A=A+INT(F*RND+1):PRINT CHRS(65+I)+" ";A:NEX
T I
2950 GOTO 3080
2960 PRINT "A ";A-INT(F*RND+1)
2970 PRINT "B ";A
298\emptyset A=A+INT(F*RND+1):PRINT "C ";A
299ø A=A+INT(F*RND+1):PRINT "D ";A
3000 GOTO 3080
3010 I=A-INT(F*RND+1):J=I-INT(F*RND+1)
302\emptyset PRINT "A ";J:PRINT "B ";I:PRINT "C ";A
3030 PRINT "D ";A+INT(F*RND+1)
3\emptyset4\emptyset GOTO 3ø8\emptyset
305ø I=A-INT(F*RND+1):J=I-INT(F*RND+1):K=J-INT(F*RND+1)
3060 PRINT "A ";K:PRINT "B ";J
3070 PRINT "C ";I&PRINT "D ";A
```


## Chapter 5

```
3080 E$=INKEY$
3090 IF ES>="a" AND E$<="d" THEN CE=ASC(ES)-96:GOTO 3120
31ø\emptyset IF E$<"A" OR E$>"D" THEN 3ø8\emptyset
3110 CE=ASC(ES)-64
312\emptyset IF CE=C THEN 3160
3130 PRINT:PRINT "NO, THE ANSWER IS ";CHR$(64+C)
3140 PRINT "DIVIDE TOTAL BY NUMBER OF ITEMS."
315\emptyset GOSUB 30:GOTO 259ø
3160 PRINT:PRINT "CORRECT!"
317\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "ANOTHER PROBLEM? (Y/N)"
3180 ES=INKEY$:IF ES="Y" OR ES="Y" THEN 2590
3190 IF E$<>"N" AND ES<<"n" THEN 3180
32øø CLS:GOTO 50\emptyset
3210 CLS
322ø END
```


## Chapter 6

## Aurays and DAAA

Statements

$$
\begin{aligned}
& U \\
& U \\
& U \\
& U
\end{aligned}
$$

## Arrays and DATA Statements

Memory locations, or addresses, are like a wallful of post office boxes, each with its own name or label. Each location contains a value. For example, suppose we have these values assigned to these locations at the beginning of a program:
A=3
$B=4$
$\mathrm{X}=10$
The boxes would look like this:

| $\mathbf{A}$ | B | $\mathbf{X}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3 | 4 | 10 |

Later in the program you may change the values:
$A=7$
$B=A+2$
$X=A+B$
The values in the boxes change; they become

| $\mathbf{A}$ | B | X |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 7 | 9 | 16 |

Each of these boxes has a name, and each name represents only one box.

Now, just as in the post office, some boxes can be bigger than others:


The $C$ box can be divided into smaller parts, but they are still parts of $C$. In this case, the $C$ box holds an array, and different values can go into each section of $C$. We specify each
part of $C$ with a subscript, a number in parentheses. The names of the elements of the array $C$ are $C(1), C(2)$, and $C(3)$.

| $A$ | $B$ | $X$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathbf{C}(1)$ | $\mathbf{C}(2)$ | $\mathbf{C}(3)$ |

Boxes can be even larger-representing one, two, or even more dimensions. Here is a chart of $D$, which has two dimensions. The first subscript may be 1 or 2 , and the second subscript may be $1,2,3$, or 4 .

| $A$ | $B$ | $X$ | $D(1,1)$ | $D(1,2)$ | $D(1,3)$ | $D(1,4)$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $C(1)$ | $C(2)$ | $C(3)$ | $D(2,1)$ | $D(2,2)$ | $D(2,3)$ | $D(2,4)$ |

## Efficient Programming

Arrays can make a repetitive computer program more efficient. Suppose you are describing three children whose names are Richard, Robert, and Randy. We can say:

```
NAMES(1)="Richard"
NAME$(2)="Robert"
NAME$(3)="Randy"
```

Now we wish to list some things about these children:

```
AGE(1)=14
AGE(2)=9
AGE (3)=5
```

COLOR $(1)=$ "Black"
$\operatorname{COLORS}(2)="$ Red"
COLORS(3)="blue"

```
SPORT$(1)="Basebali"
SPORT$(2)="Football"
SPORT$(3)="Basketball"
```

We now have our information about the children in four arrays. You can print a list of the children by using a single loop and a variable subscript:

```
2ø0 FOR J=1 TO 3
21\varnothing PRINT NAME$(J);AGE(J),SPORT$(J)
22ø NEXT J
```

If you wish to know about a particular child, print only his or her information by searching the arrays for a particular subscript.

```
N=2:PRINT NAME$(N),COLOR$(N)
```

If you have a longer list, you could sort. For example, to find all the nine-year-olds, for any given total number (T) of children:

```
4|ø FOR J=1 TO T
41\varnothing IF AGE(J)<>9 THEN 430
```

$42 \varnothing$ PRINT NAMES(J)
430 NEXT J

The computer will execute only line 420 and print a name when the value of $\operatorname{AGE}(\mathrm{J})$ is 9 .

Two-dimensional arrays. This information about the children could be in a two-dimensional array rather than in the four one-dimensional arrays above. Call the main array PERSON\$. The data may be arranged like this:

```
PERSON$(1,1)="Richard"
PERSON$(1, 2)="14"
PERSONS(1,3)="Black"
PERSON$(1,4)="Baseball"
```

```
PERSON$(2,1)="Robert"
PERSONS(2,2)="9"
PERSON$(2,3)="Red"
PERSON$(2,4)="Football"
PERSON$(3,1)="Randy"
PERSON$(3,2)="5"
PERSONS(3,3)="Blue"
PERSON$(3,4)="Basketball"
```

The first subscript tells us which child's data is held in that variable, and the second subscript identifies the category of information, name, age, color, and sport. The word or number in quotation marks is the string placed in each address of our post office boxes.

Arrays can contain both numeric variables and string variables.

## Creating Dimensions

If you use a variable name with a subscript without first DIMensioning that variable, the computer automatically reserves 11 elements for the array (subscripts 0 through 10). If you need more than 11, use a DIM statement to clear enough space:

DIM $D(3 \varnothing)$
If you want to conserve memory and you do not need all 11 elements, you can save memory by DIMensioning the array for fewer elements:

```
10 DIM A(6)
```

The DIMension statement must appear before any reference to the array; it is wise to put all DIMension statements near the beginning of the program.

The computer automatically starts numbering all subscripts with zero. In other words, there can be elements such as $D(0)$ and $E(1,0)$. Since the zero variable counts as one element, a statement like DIM A(10) reserves 11 subscripted vari-
ables, $\mathrm{A}(0)$ through $\mathrm{A}(10)$. If you prefer to use only elements numbered one and above, you may use the OPTION BASE statement:

OPTION BASE 1
DIM $A(5), B(12)$

## DATA, READ, and RESTORE Statements

A DATA statement is always associated with a READ statement, and together they essentially perform LET, or assignment, processes, assigning values to variables. (By the way, the command LET is optional in Amiga BASIC; LET A=4 usually is written $\mathrm{A}=4$.)

Suppose we want to initialize several variables, then print some combinations of the numbers. The program segment would be like this:

```
1\varnothing A=4
2ø B=7
3ø C=3
40 D=5
50 E=12
60 F=2
7\varnothing PRINT A+B,C*D,E/F
```

Using DATA and READ, lines $10-60$ may be combined like this:

```
10 READ A,B,C,D,E,F
20 DATA 4,7,3,5,12,2
7ø PRINT A+B,C*D,E/F
```

Both of these sequences do the same thing. Defining the variables without using DATA statements can sometimes make a program easier to understand, with less chance for error. However, using DATA statements can combine many repetitious lines and thus save memory and make the program more efficient.

When the computer comes to a READ statement, it looks for the first DATA statement. The first variable in the READ statement will correspond with the first number in the DATA statement. In this case, the computer will read 4 for the value of A. The computer will then READ B and will go to the very next DATA item to assign 7 to $B$, and so on.

The DATA statement may be placed anywhere in the program. For example, you may change line 20 and put the DATA statement at line 5 and place it before the READ statement. Or you may change it to line 80 after the PRINT statement, and the program will work exactly the same. The computer ignores DATA statements until a READ statement is encountered; then the computer will look at the DATA statements in order.

You won't actually see anything while the computer is reading data, but your variables will be assigned the values and you can use them in calculations. To see the results, you will need to PRINT.

Your data items may also be strings. Quite often, you will see a READ statement in a loop to perform repeated operations, perhaps using subscripted variables or variables in an array:

```
10 REM DATAI
20 FOR C=1 TO 10
30 READ N$(C):PRINT N$(C)
40 NEXT C
5 0 \text { DATA CHERY,RICHARD,CINDY,BOB,RANDY}
6 0 ~ D A T A ~ B R E T T , E D , B I L L , J O H N , J I M ~
```

In this program segment, $\mathrm{N} \$(1)$ will be CHERY, $\mathrm{N} \$(2)$ will be RICHARD, and so on. Since long lines (up to 255 characters) are accepted, all of the data may be typed on one line. Or you may use several lines for the DATA statements. The computer keeps track of a data pointer to know how much data is used and which is the next item to be used. If all the data is finished in one line, the computer goes to the next DATA statement if it needs more. If you do not have enough data items, however, the computer will display an error message.

Your job as a programmer is to make sure that the data matches the READ statements and that items are read in the
right order. You may combine numbers and strings in the same statements as long as you make sure the numbers go to numeric variable names and the strings go to string variable names. If you have extra data items, the computer simply ignores them.

Reusing data. The RESTORE statement lets you reuse the data items or makes sure the computer starts with the very first DATA statement in the program. RESTORE moves the data pointer from whatever data items have already been used back to the first item. Program 6-1 is an example.

## Program 6-1. DATA2

```
10 REM DATA2
20 FOR C=1 TO 3
3ø READ A,B
4ø PRINT A;"+";B;"=";A+B
50 NEXT C
60 PRINT
70 RESTORE
8ø FOR C=1 TO 2
9ø READ X,Y
1øø PRINT X;"*";Y;"=";X*Y
110 NEXT C
120 DATA 2,4,8,5,7,3
136 END
```

When you run this program, the values of $A$ and $B$ will first be 2 and 4 , then 8 and 5 , then 7 and 3 . Line 70 RESTOREs the data. $X$ and $Y$ will then be read as 2 and 4 the first time through the loop, and 8 and 5 the second time through the loop. We didn't need to use all the data. If there were another READ statement later in the program, the data value would be 7 .

In the program above, it wouldn't matter if we interchanged lines 60 and 70; the result would be the same. The RESTORE and READ statements may be separated by other statements. Notice, however, that the program would be different if you put the RESTORE statement between lines 80 and 90.

If you spend a little time experimenting with DATA, READ, and RESTORE statements, you'll soon understand how they work. Try putting your statements in different places in the program. Try using different numbers of items in the DATA and READ statements.

A specific starting point. Another useful feature of the RESTORE statement is that you can specify a data line num-
ber. RESTORE alone will start the data over with the first DATA line in the program. RESTORE $n$, where $n$ is a line number, will start the data over with the data in line $n$. For example, RESTORE 800 in a program means that the next READ statement will start with the data in line 800 . This command can really help you keep track of DATA statements. If you have a long program with a lot of data, you can arrange your data properly, then use RESTORE $n$ before each READ statement so that you know exactly which data goes with which segment of the program.

Following is an example of using RESTORE in a music program. The data items are frequencies for the SOUND command. Some of the musical phrases will be used more than once. Rather than making you type more DATA statements (which would be repetitious), RESTORE allows the same data to be used over again.

In this example, GOSUB 120 will perform the subroutine in lines $120-160$. This subroutine READs a frequency $F$, then plays the note, and repeats this process for seven notes. To make it easier to understand, the data items are arranged seven to a line. Line 20 will read the data in line 40 . Line 30 will read the data in line 50 . Line 60 RESTOREs the data in line 40 so that line 70 will use the data in line 40 again. Since line 40 is also the first DATA statement, I could have used either RESTORE or RESTORE 40. Line 80 says to RESTORE 100 , so line 90 will use the data of line 100 .

## Program 6-2. DATA3

```
10 REM DATA3
20 GOSUB 120
30 GOSUB 120
40 DATA 262,330,294,262,330,392,349
50 DATA 440,392,494,523,587,494,523
60 RESTORE 40
70 GOSUB 120
80 RESTORE 1ø\emptyset
90 GOSUB 120
100 DATA 262,330,294,262,392,330,262
110 GOTO 170
120 FOR C=1 TO 7
130 READ F
140 SOUND F,10
150 NEXT C
160 RETURN
170 END
```

If you have problems with this sample program, the most likely place to look for typing errors is in the DATA state-

## Chapter 6

ments. Remember that those numbers are frequencies, so they will all be three-digit numbers. Make sure you have the commas placed correctly, and make sure you don't have a comma at the end of a line.

One thing to keep in mind with programming is that there are several ways to write a program to accomplish the same thing. The DATA/READ process is just one method, and even then there are different ways of arranging your DATA and READ statements to make the computer do what you want it to do.

The "Math Competency" program in the previous chapter illustrates the use of arrays for the variables.

The "Roman Numerals" program is another program that uses arrays and DATA statements. Each element of the array contains the roman numeral equivalent.

Next, let's look at a program which creates the Braille alphabet-you could use the same idea for Morse code or for lowercase letters corresponding to capital letters or your own symbol code.

This program illustrates using arrays for the variables. Instead of using $A=100000, B=101000, C=110000$, and so forth, the variables are $\mathrm{B} \$(1), \mathrm{B} \$(2), \ldots$, through $\mathrm{B} \$(26)$ for the 26 letters of the alphabet. Each B\$ holds a code for the Braille dots. There are six positions for dots in Braille. The code for each letter consists of ones and zeros; a one indicates a dot and a zero indicates a blank space.

Line 70 is a FOR-NEXT loop that reads in the 26 values. The data is contained in lines $80-120$. To help you in typing the lines, these DATA statements contain five numbers each, except the last statement, which has six.

Lines 210-280 contain a subroutine that converts the ones and zeros to the graphic representation of the Braille symbol. One by one, each number of the six-digit code is examined. If the number is one, a lowercase $o$ is printed representing a dot. If the number is zero, a space is printed.

The program consists of three parts. The first part prints the Braille alphabet in order. (If you want to quit and return to the main menu, press RETURN.) The second part allows you to press any letter key to see the equivalent Braille symbol. Part 3 is a quiz. A random letter is shown. The user presses the letter key for the Braille pattern. In any section you can get back to the main menu screen by pressing RETURN.

Outline of Braille Program


20-50 Clear screen and print title.
60 Dimensions arrays $B \$(26)$ for the Braille equivalents of the 26 letters and $N(26)$ for use in the quiz.
70 READs in the values for $\mathrm{B} \$$.
80-120 DATA containing the codes for the Braille letters.
130-200 Print main menu screen and branch.
210-280 Subroutine to print the Braille symbol in three rows of two positions each. COLOR 2,1 changes to black printing on a white background. MID\$ looks at the code one digit at a time.
290-300 Subroutine to delay.
330-350 Print introduction for printing Braille alphabet.
360-400 For the 26 letters, print the Braille equivalent.
INKEY\$ checks to see if the RETURN key is pressed.
410-430 Wait for user to press RETURN.
490-540 Detect key pressed by user, which must be RETURN or one of the alphabet letters.
$550 \quad$ Prints the letter pressed and its Braille equivalent.
560 Branches back to line 490.
570-630 Print instructions for quiz.
640 Initializes N array to keep track of which letters have been used; initializes $G$ for number of guesses.
650 Performs quiz for 26 letters.
660 Chooses a random letter that has not been chosen before.
670 Initializes flag $F$ for use in keeping track of missed letters.
680 Increments number of guesses, G.
690-700 Print Braille letter.
710-760 Receive answer.
770 If answer is correct, prints message.
780-820 If answer is incorrect, return for another guess. If answer is incorrect twice, show correct letter. Wait for user to press RETURN.
830 If answer is correct, sets $\mathrm{N}(\mathrm{T})$ to zero so the letter will not be chosen again.
840 Goes to next letter.
870 Transfers to line 410.
880 Ends.

## Chapter 6

## Program 6-3. Braille

```
10 REM BRAILLE
20 CLS
30 PRINT TAB(2\emptyset);STRINGS(20,"*")
40 PRINT TAB(20);"* BRAILLE ALPHABET *"
50 PRINT TAB(20);STRING$(20,"*")
60 DIM B$(26),N(26)
70 FOR T=1 TO 26:READ B$(T):NEXT T
```




```
100 DATA 100010,101010,110010,110110,100110
110 DATA 111010,111110,101110,011010,011110
120 DATA lø\emptyset\emptysetl1,1ø1011,\emptyset11101,110011,110111,100111
130 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT TAB(5);"CHOOSE:"
140 PRINT TAB(15);"1 SEE COMPLETE ALPHABET"
150 PRINT TAB(15);"2 CHOOSE LETTERS"
160 PRINT TAB(15):"3 QUIZ"
170 PRINT TAB(15);"4 END PROGRAM"
180 E$=INKEYS:IF ES<"l" OR E$>"4" THEN 180
190 CLS
2ø0 ON VAL(E$) GOTO 33|,440,57\emptyset,880
210 FOR J=1 TO 3:COLOR 2,1
220 AS=MID$(BS(T),J*2-1,1)
230 CS=MID$(BS(T),J*2,1)
240 IF AS="l" THEN PRINT " O "; ELSE PRINT " ";
250 IF C$="1" THEN PRINT "O "; ELSE PRINT " ";
260 COLOR 1,ø:PRINT:PRINT TAB(16);
270 NEXT J:PRINT:PRINT
280 RETURN
290 FOR DELAY=1 TO 2DDD:NEXT DELAY
30\varnothing RETURN
330 PRINT TAB(20);"ALPHABET"
340 PRINT:PRINT "PRESS <RETURN> TO RETURN TO MAIN MENU."
350 PRINT:PRINT
360 FOR T=1 TO 26
370 PRINT TAB(8);CHRS(64+T);TAB(16);:GOSUB 210
380 ES=INKEY$:IF ES=CHRS(13) THEN CLS:GOTO 12\emptyset
390 GOSUB 29|
400 NEXT T
410 PRINT:PRINT "PRESS <RETURN>."
420 E$=INKEY$:IF ES<>CHR$(13) THEN 420
430 CLS:GOTO 120
44ø PRINT "Press a letter. The Braille equivalent will be s
hown."
450 PRINT
460 PRINT "Press <RETURN> to get back to the main menu scree
n."
470 PRINT
480 PRINT "Start by pressing any letter.":PRINT:PRINT
490 E$=INKEY$
500 IF ES="" THEN 490
510 IF ES=CHRS(13) THEN CLS:GOTO 120
52\emptyset IF ES<"A" OR ES>"z" THEN 49\emptyset
530 IF E$>"Z" AND ES<"a" THEN 490
540 IF ES<"a" THEN T=ASC(ES)-64 ELSE T=ASC(ES)-96
550 PRINT TAB(8);CHRS(T+64);TAB(16);:GOSUB 210
560 GOTO 49|
570 PRINT TAB(20);"BRAILLE QUIZ"
e" 58| PRINT:PRINT "You will see a Braille representation of on
```

```
590 PRINT:PRINT "Of the letters of the alphabet."
60| PRINT:PRINT "Type the letter."
610 PRINT:PRINT "The quiz consists of 26 letters."
620 PRINT:PRINT "Press <RETURN> if you prefer to stop the qu
iz."
630 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
640 FOR T=1 TO 26:N(T)=1:NEXT T:G=\emptyset
650 FOR Z=1 TO 26
660 T=INT(26*RND)+1:IF N(T)=\varnothing THEN 66|
67ø F=\varnothing
680 G=G+1
69ø PRINT TAB(16);
700 GOSUB 210
710 E$=INKEY$
720 IF ES="" THEN 710
73ø IF E$=CHRS(13) THEN CLS:GOTO 12\emptyset
74| IF ES>="A" AND ES<="Z" THEN E=ASC(ES)-64:GOTO 760
750 IF E$>="a" AND ES<<"z" THEN E=ASC(ES)-96 ELSE 710
760 PRINT TAB(16);ES:PRINT
77\varnothing IF E=T THEN PRINT "CORRECT":PRINT:GOTO 830
78ø F=F+1:IF F<2 THEN PRINT "SORRY, TRY AGAIN.":PRINT:PRINT:
GOTO 68|
790 PRINT "THE CORRECT ANSWER IS ";CHRS(T+64)
8øø PRINT:PRINT "PRESS <SPACE BAR>":PRINT:PRINT
810 ES=INKEY$:IF ES<<" " THEN 810
82ø GOTO 660
830 N(T)=\varnothing
8 4 0 ~ N E X T ~ Z ~
85ø PRINT:PRINT "OUT OF 26 LETTERS,"
860 PRINT "YOU REQUIRED";G;"GUESSES."
870 GOTO 41ø
880 END
```

The "States and Capitals" program in the sample program section (Chapter 14) illustrates the use of READ, DATA, and RESTORE in drawing the states. Line labels are used to help keep track of which data goes with which state.

## Arrays in Recipes

Here is another program, "Cookie File," (Program 6-4), that illustrates the use of READ and DATA statements. This program uses line numbers instead of labels. Arrays are used to keep track of an ingredient list and an inventory of ingredients. DATA statements are used to hold recipes for cookies. RESTORE is used to get to a certain recipe.

The first section lists the ingredients. You may specify $Y$ for yes or N for no, indicating whether you have the ingrediint or not. After you have gone through the list of ingredients, the computer will let you know which cookies can be made with those ingredients.

The second section of the program prints the recipe for

## Chapter 6

the cookie you choose. Fifteen recipes are included. After the recipe is printed, you may convert the recipe if you wishmultiply the recipe by two or three or one half, or even a number with a fraction such as 7.5 .

Lines 1310-1350 list the ingredients with their measurements. This information is READ in in lines 30-60. The ingredients are saved in the INV\$ array, and the ingredients with the measurements are in the ING $\$$ array. $\operatorname{INV} \$(n, 0)$ stores the names of the ingredients for the $n$ ingredients, and INV $\$(n, 1)$ stores a $Y$ or N for the inventory list.

The cookie recipes are in the DATA statements in lines 1360-1500. Following the name of the cookie are the amounts of the ingredients in the same order as they are in the ingredient list. Only those ingredients used will have numbers. In typing these statements, you need to be very careful to get the commas in the right places or you might get data errors or wrong recipes. The last number in the line is the oven temperature. Lines 810-960 RESTORE the proper data for each type of cookie.

When the computer is checking to see which cookies can be made, the data for the cookies is restored. If a there is a number in the recipe indicating an ingredient, the corresponding ingredient in the inventory list is checked and has to be a Y . If it is an N , indicating you don't have the ingredient, that cookie name will not be printed.

## Outline of Cookie File Program

\(\left.$$
\begin{array}{ll}\begin{array}{c}\text { Lines } \\
20\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\text { Explanation } \\
\text { DIMensions arrays for } 20 \text { ingredients and inventory } \\
\text { items. }\end{array}
$$ <br>
30-60 \& READ in from DATA the measurements and names <br>

of the ingredients.\end{array}\right\}\)| $70-150$ | Clear screen, print main menu screen, then branch. |
| :--- | :--- |
| $160-200$ | Print instructions for inventory list. |
| 210 | Initializes number of Y (Yes) ingredients. |
| $220-320$ | For each ingredient print the name and record re- <br> sponse of Y or N. |
| 330 | Initializes C as the number of cookies that can be <br> made. |
| $340-380$ | If the user does not have flour or sugar or if the <br> number of available ingredients is four or fewer, <br> print message for no cookies. |


| Lines | Explanation |
| :--- | :--- |
| $390-410$ | Wait for user to press RETURN; branch to main |
| 420 | menu. |
| 430 | RESTOREs data for cookie recipes. |
| $440-480$ | READs name of cookie. |
| $490-500$ | Print nare ingredients in recipe with inventory list. |
|  | counter. |
| $510-550$ | Read next data item, checking for next cookie. |
| 560 | If no cookies can be made, branches back to |
|  | message. |
| $570-580$ | Print message and branch to wait procedure. |
| $590-760$ | Print list of available cookie recipes. |
| $770-790$ | Receive choice, making sure key pressed is avail- |
|  | able letter for recipe. |
| $800-810$ | Branch to desired cookie. |
| $820-960$ | RESTORE proper DATA statement for recipe. |
| 970 | Prints name of cookie. |
| $980-1060$ | READ data for ingredient. If a number is read, that |
|  | is the measurement for the corresponding ingredient. |
| $1070-1080$ | READ and print temperature. |
| 1090 | Prints instruction for certain recipes. |
| $1100-1180$ | Ask if user wants to convert recipe, and if so, by |
| $1190-1240$ | what number or fraction. |
| Print converted recipe. |  |
| $1250-1260$ | Ask if user wants to convert again. |
| $1270-1290$ | Wait for user to press RETURN before going to |
| $1300-1350$ | main menu. |
|  | DATA for measures and ingredients. Quotation |
| marks are used because measures have a trailing |  |
| space. |  |

## Program 6-4. Cookie File

```
10 REM COOKIE FILE
20 DIM ING$(19),INV$(19,1)
30 FOR I=\emptyset TO 19
40 READ A$,INV$(I,0)
50 INGS (I)=AS+INVS (I, Ø)
60 NEXT I
70 CLS
8| PRINT TAB(12);"COOKIE FILE"
90 PRINT:PRINT "CHOOSE:"
1Ø\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "1 NEED TO KNOW WHAT CAN BE MADE"
```


## Chapter 6

| 720 | PRINT "K OATMEAL CHOCOLATE CHIPS" |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 730 | PRINT "L OATMEAL CRISPS" | $\pm$ |
| 740 | PRINT "M SNICKERDOODLES" |  |
| 750 | PRINT "N SUGAR COOKIES" |  |
| 760 | PRINT "O TOFFEE BARS" |  |
| 770 | CS=INKEYS |  |
| 780 | IF CS>="a" AND C\$<="o" THEN C=ASC(C\$)-96:GOTO 80ض |  |
| 790 | IF C < "A" OR C\$>"Z" THEN 770 ELSE $\mathrm{C=}=\mathrm{ASC}(\mathrm{CS})-64$ |  |
| $8 \emptyset 0$ | CLS |  |
| 810 | ON C GOTO 820,830,840,850,86ø,870,880,890,9ø0,910,920,93 |  |
| Ø, 94 | 0,950,960 |  |
| 820 | RESTORE 136Ш:GOTO 970 |  |
| 830 | RESTORE 1370:GOTO 970 |  |
| 840 | RESTORE 1380:GOTO 970 |  |
| 850 | RESTORE 1390:GOTO 970 |  |
| 860 | RESTORE 14ØØ:GOTO 970 |  |
| 870 | RESTORE 1410:GOTO 970 |  |
| 880 | RESTORE 1420:GOTO 970 |  |
| 890 | RESTORE 1430:GOTO 970 |  |
| $9 \emptyset 0$ | RESTORE 1440:GOTO 97y |  |
| 910 | RESTORE 1450:GOTO 970 |  |
| 920 | RESTORE 1460:GOTO 970 |  |
| 930 | RESTORE 1470:GOTO 970 |  |
| 940 | RESTORE 1480:GOTO 970 |  |
| 950 | RESTORE 1490:GOTO 970 |  |
| 960 | RESTORE 15øø:GOTO 970 |  |
| 970 | READ AS:PRINT A\$:PRINT |  |
| 980 | $\mathrm{I}=\varnothing$ |  |
| 990 | FOR J=Ø TO 19 |  |
| $1 \varnothing 0$. | READ B\$ |  |
| 1010 |  |  |
| 1020 | AMT ( I ) = VAL ( B ${ }^{\text {) }}$ |  |
| 1030 | INGR\$ ( I ) = ING ${ }^{\text {( }} \mathrm{J}$ ) |  |
| 1040 | PRINT AMT(I); INGR\$(I) |  |
| 1050 | $\mathrm{I}=\mathrm{I}+1$ |  |
| 1060 | NEXT J |  |
| 1070 | READ T |  |
| 1080 | PRINT:PRINT "Bake at";T;"degrees." |  |
| 1090 | IF C=8 OR C=1 $\emptyset$ THEN PRINT "Roll in powdered sugar." |  |
| 1100 | PRINT:PRINT "WANT TO CONVERT RECIPE? (Y/N)" |  |
| 1116 | K\$=INKEY\$ |  |
| 1120 | IF K\$="N" OR K\$="n" THEN 1270 |  |
| 1130 | IF K\$̧<>"Y" AND K\$<>"Y" THEN 1110 |  |
| 1140 | PRINT:PRINT "MULTIPLY BY WHAT NUMBER" |  |
| 1150 | INPUT "OR DECIMAL FRACTION"; $F$ |  |
| 1160 | IF F>0 THEN 1190 |  |
| 1170 | PRINT:PRINT "SORRY, F>め" |  |
| 1180 | GOTO 1143 |  |
| 1190 | CLS |  |
| 1200 | PRINT F;"TIMES ORIGINAL RECIPE":PRINT:PRINT |  |
| 1210 | PRINT AS:PRINT |  |
| 1220 | FOR K=ø TO I-1 |  |
| 1230 | PRINT F*AMT(K) ; INGR\$ (K) |  |
| 1240 | NEXT K |  |
| 1250 | PRINT:PRINT "CONVERT AGAIN? (Y/N)" |  |
| 1260 | GOTO 1110 |  |
| 1270 | PRINT:PRINT "PRESS <RETURN> TO CONTINUE." |  |
| 1280 | K\$=INKEY\$:IF K\$<>CHRS(13) THEN 1280 | $\square$ |
| 1290 | GOTO 70 |  |
| 1300 | REM |  |

## Chapter 6

```
1310 DATA "c. ",shortening,"c. ",sugar,"c. ",brown sugar
1315 DATA "c. ",powdered sugar,"tbsp. ",honey,"",eggs
1320 DATA "tsp. ",vanilla,"c. ",flour,"tsp. ",baking powder
1325 DATA "tsp. ",baking soda,"tsp. ",salt
1330 DATA "tsp. ",cinnamon,"tbsp. ",cocoa,"tsp. ",almond ext
ract
1335 DATA "c. ",milk,"c. ",oatmeal
1340 DATA "oz. ",chocolate chips,"doz. ",almonds
1350 DATA "tsp. ",cake decors,"c. ",cinnamon & sugar
1360 DATA ALMOND COOKIES,2,2,,.,2,,3,2,,.,.,2,,.,4,,,375
1370 DATA BALL COOKIES,.5,.33,,,,1,.5,.75,,,,,,,,,,,2,,375
1380 DATA BROWNIES,.5,1,.,.2,1,.75,.5,..5,,6,.,.,.,.350
1390 DATA BUTTERSCOTCH BARS,.5,.2,.,2,1,1.75,2,,.25
,375
14ø\emptyset DATA CHOCOLATE CHIP BARS,.5,.1,.,1,1,1.75,..5,.5,.,.,5,
,12,.,.350
1410 DATA CHOCOLATE CHIP COOKIES,.5,.25,.5,,.1,.5,1,,.5,.5,,
,,,,6,.,.375
142Ø DATA CHOCOLATE DROP COOKIES,.5,,1,,,1,1,1.67,,.5,.5,.6,
,.5,.,.,.,350
1430 DATA HONEY BALLS,.5,.,.2,,1,1,.,.25,.,.,.,.,.,30|
1440 DATA HONEY SPICE COOKIES,.5,.75,,,4,,.5,1,.,..5,.,.,...
.375
1450 DATA MEXICAN WEDDING COOKIES,.75,.,.67,,.1,1.5,.,.25,1,
.,..75,.,.,.325
1460 DATA OATMEAL CHOCOLATE CHIPS,1,1,.5,.,2,1,2,,1,1,.,.,2,
6,.,.350
1470 DATA OATMEAL CRISPS,1,1,1,.,2,1,1.5,,1,1,.,.,3,.,.,.350
1480 DATA SNICKERDOODLES,1,1.5,.,,2,,2.75,3,,.5,,,,.,.,.,5,4
\emptyset0
1490 DATA SUGAR COOKIES,.67,.75,,.,1,.5,2,1.5,..25,,.,.25,.,
.,.375
150\emptyset DATA TOFFEE BARS,1,,1,.,,1,2,,.,.,,,,,6,,.,350
1510 DATA ZZZ
1520 CLS
1530 END
```

$$
\begin{aligned}
& U \\
& U \\
& U \\
& U
\end{aligned}
$$

Chapter 7

## Menus, <br> Windows, and the Mouse

$$
\begin{aligned}
& U \\
& U \\
& U \\
& U
\end{aligned}
$$

# Menus, Windows, and the Mouse 

You can look at how menus work on the Amiga when you first turn on the computer. After inserting the Workbench disk, push the right mouse button and move toward the top of the screen. The top highlighted line will change and menu titles will appear. As you touch a title, a menu will drop down with several options. As you move the mouse downward, the subtitles will be highlighted. To make a selection, you place the pointer over the item you want and then release the right mouse button.

You can use this same menu structure in your BASIC programs. The form for creating a menu is

## MENU menu-id,item-id,state [,title]

The menu-id is the number assigned to the menu bar selection and can be a number from 1 through 10 . If you select 1 , for example, your menu will be in the leftmost menu position.

The item-id is the number assigned to the menu item under the menu bar and can be a value from 0 through 20 . Itemid 0 refers to the entire menu. The other numbers are for the choices under the main topic.

The state argument is 0 to disable, 1 to enable, or 2 to enable and place a checkmark.

The title is a string containing the title of the item chosen.

## MENU Functions

MENU ON enables event trapping or use of the ON MENU GOSUB statement.

There are two functions involved with MENU. MENU(0) is similar to INKEY\$ and is reset to zero every time it executes, but returns a number which corresponds to the number of the last menu bar selection made-the main menu chosen.

MENU(1) returns a number which corresponds to the number of the last menu item chosen or the subtopic chosen.

MENU RESET restores the original Amiga BASIC default menu bar.

Program 7-1 illustrates the use of the MENU statements.

This sample only prints a statement when an item is chosen, but this method could be used to choose actual menu items in a program.

Line 20 resets the second position menu to FRACTIONS. Under this title there will be five subtopics, which are defined in lines 30-70.

Lines $100-110$ check to see whether the second menu has been selected. For our example, the program just stays at these lines until FRACTIONS is chosen.

Under FRACTIONS are the five choices. Line 120 uses MENU(1) to see which item has been chosen and calls it CHOICE. Line 130 branches depending on the item chosen. If you choose to end the program, line 610 resets the menu bar to the original second menu in Amiga BASIC.

## Program 7-1. Menus

```
10 REM MENUS
2\emptyset MENU 2,\varnothing,1,"FRACTIONS"
30 MENU 2,1,1,"Simplify"
4ø MENU 2,2,1,"Add"
50 MENU 2,3,1,"Multiply"
60 MENU 2,4,1,"Divide"
7! MENU 2,5,1,"End Program"
80 MENU ON
90 CLS
1\varnothing\emptyset M=MENU(\varnothing)
11\varnothing IF M<>2 THEN 1\varnothing\emptyset
12Ø CHOICE=MENU (1)
130 ON CHOICE GOSUB 2\emptyset0,300,400,500,60\emptyset
140 GOTO l6も
2ø\emptyset PRINT "Simplify Fractions"
21\emptyset RETURN
30\emptyset PRINT "Add Fractions"
31| RETURN
4ø\emptyset PRINT "Multiply Fractions"
4 1 0 ~ R E T U R N
50\emptyset PRINT "Divide Fractions"
51\emptyset RETURN
600 PRINT "End Program"
6 1 0 \text { MENU RESET}
6 2 0 ~ E N D
```


## Creating Windows

You can make your own windows in BASIC with the versatile

## WINDOW id

where id is a number which identifies the window. For example, The Output window that appears while you are in

## Chapter 7

BASIC is window number 1, so for your own windows you should specify a number greater than 1 .

You can add more information to a WINDOW statement to further define your program's window. In order, you can give the window a title, specify the size similar to the LINE or GET command, specify a type which sets up how much the user can do with the window, and choose a screen ID which can be a value from 1 through 4 . When you use the WINDOW statement, a new Output window is created and displayed and brought to the front of the screen.

The title is a string expression that will show up in the title bar at the top of the window.

The type is a number from 0 through 31:
1 Window size can be changed and a sizing gadget appears in the lower right side of the window.
2 Window can be moved about using the title bar.
4 Window can be moved from front to back of other windows, and that gadget appears in the upper right corner.
8 Window can be closed using a close gadget.
16 Contents of window reappear after the window has temporarily been covered by another window.

To specify a type, add together two or more of these values.

To define the size of the window, use the rectangular coordinates of the form ( $x 1, y 1$ )-( $x 2, y 2$ ), where ( $x 1, y 1$ ) are the coordinates of the upper left corner and ( $x 2, y 2$ ) are the coordinates of the lower right corner on the full screen. If you don't specify coordinates for the size, the window appears at the current default for that window-whatever was previously set in the program. The initial defaults are for the full screen.

WINDOW CLOSE id is the command to make the named window invisible.

WINDOW OUTPUT id names the window for current output without moving the window to the front-direct output can go to a window that is behind another.

## A Window Illustration

The next program illustrates some of the options of the WINDOW statement. It sets up three windows and puts something in each.

Line 30 defines window 2, entitled Printing. It will be at the rectangle from $(10,10)$ to $(250,50)$, which is the upper left section of the screen. Its type number is 14 , which says the window can be moved about using the title bar; it has the front and back option; and it can be closed by the upper left corner gadget $(2+4+8=14)$.

Line 40 sets up window 3 with the title Lines. It will be at the right side of the screen and has a type of 7. It can be moved about using the title bar; it can be moved from front to back; and the window size can be changed.

Line 50 defines window 4 with the title Circles. It will appear in the lower left section of the screen and has type 6. This window can be moved about and has the front and back gadget.

When you run the program and the windows appear, you can see the different gadgets available in the corners of each window. You can experiment with the mouse to see which options are available.

Lines $60-80$ print a message in window 2. Notice that the COLOR command only applies to that window.

Lines $90-130$ draw lines in window 3 . Keep in mind that the coordinates specified in graphics commands are relative to that window wherever it is-not the whole output screen.

Lines 140-190 draw circles in window 4. Again, notice the coordinates are for that window, not the big screen.

## Program 7-2. Windows

```
1\varnothing REM WINDOWS
2ø CLS
30 WINDOW 2,"Printing",(10,10)-(250,50),14
40 WINDOW 3,"Lines", (265,15)-(500,65),7
5\emptyset WINDOW 4,"Circles",(15,65)-(30\emptyset,18\emptyset),6
60 WINDOW 2
7& COLOR 3,2:LOCATE 3,5
80 PRINT "This is Window 2"
9ø WINDOW 3
100 X2=16
11\emptyset LINE(\varnothing, Ø)-(X2,100)
120 x2=x2+10
130 IF X2<40\emptyset THEN 110
140 WINDOW 4
150 X=15:Y=10
160 FOR I=1 TO 9
170 CIRCLE (X,Y),20
180 X=X+2\emptyset:Y=Y+1\emptyset
190 NEXT I
200 END
```


## Controlling the Mouse

You can control cursor movements and make menu selections with either the keyboard or the mouse, but using the mouse gives both the programmer and the program user more flexibility. There are several commands and functions in Amiga BASIC that relate to the mouse and the position of the pointer arrow. You should refer to your manual for detailed discussion of these commands. Here we will summarize the commands and give some sample programs of how the mouse commands work.

The MOUSE ON statement enables event trapping based on the user's pressing the left mouse button.

Related to MOUSE ON is ON MOUSE-GOSUB, which directs the program for events.

MOUSE OFF disables the ON MOUSE event trapping.
MOUSE STOP suspends mouse event trapping-event trapping continues but the ON MOUSE-GOSUB statement is not executed until a subsequent MOUSE ON statement is executed.

The MOUSE $(n)$ functions are listed in your Amiga BASIC manual in detail. This function returns values that indicate whether the left mouse button was pressed and give information about the position of the arrow. The function parameter $n$ can be a number from 0 through 6 .

This first short program (Program 7-3) checks the position of the mouse when the button is pressed. Line 30 uses MOUSE $(0)$ to check whether the button is pressed. The program stays at this line until the value of the function is not zero. When you press the left button, the value is no longer zero and the program continues. Line 40 uses MOUSE(5) to determine the ending $x$ coordinate and MOUSE(6) for the ending y coordinate. These values are printed on the screen.

Line 50 returns to line 30 . As you run this program, move the mouse to various places to see the coordinates returned when you press the left mouse button. To stop the program, press CTRL-C (Break).

## Program 7-3. Mouse

```
1\emptyset REM MOUSE
20 CLS
3\emptyset IF MOUSE( }0)=\varnothing\mathrm{ THEN 30
40 PRINT MOUSE(5);",";MOUSE(6)
5\emptyset GOTO 30
60 END
```

Now, what do you do with those coordinates? Here's a short routine (Program 7-4) that shows how you can draw by pressing the left button and moving the mouse around.

Line 20 defines x and y to be integers using DEFINT. Line 30 clears the screen. Line 40 waits until the left mouse button is pressed. When the button is pressed, line 50 checks the current $x$ coordinate with MOUSE(1) and the current $y$ coordinate with MOUSE(2) and returns the values $x$ and $y$. These coordinates are used in the PSET command in line 60 to turn on a point-place a white dot on the blue screen. Line 70 branches back to line 40 to keep checking the mouse button.

## Program 7-4. Drawing with the Mouse

```
10 REM DRAWING WITH MOUSE
2ø DEFINT X,Y
36 CLS
40 IF MOUSE(\varnothing)=\varnothing THEN 4\varnothing
50 X=MOUSE(1):Y=MOUSE(2)
60 PSET (X,Y)
70 GOTO 40
80 END
```

To move an object, use the GET and PUT commands. GET gets a rectangle of information or a picture from a specified area, then PUT places that rectangle back on the screen in a different place.

Use a DIMension statement to reserve an array large enough to keep track of the information in the rectangle you will be moving. GET is of the form
GET ( $\mathbf{x 1}, \mathbf{y} 1$ )-( $\mathbf{x} \mathbf{2}, \mathbf{y} 2$ ), $\mathbf{A}$
where ( $x 1, y 1$ ) are the coordinates of the upper left corner of the desired rectangle and $(x 2, y 2)$ are the coordinates of the lower right corner. $A$ is the array name given to this rectangle.

PUT specifies the coordinates of the upper left corner where you want to put the array A. The form is

## PUT ( $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}$ ),A

Program 7-5 is an illustration of the use of GET and PUT. Line 20 dimensions the array A. Line 40 draws a box, and line 50 draws a circle in the box. Line 60 uses the coordinates of the box's outside dimensions and calls this rectangle the A array. Line 70 redraws the picture with PUT, starting at the upper left coordinates $(100,100)$.

## Program 7-5. GET and PUT

```
10 REM GETPUT
20 DIM A(l|も)
30 CLS
40 LINE (10,1\varnothing)-( 30,3|), ,BF
50 CIRCLE (2\emptyset,2\emptyset),8,\emptyset
60 GET (10,10)-(30,30),A
70 PUT (100,100),A
80 END
```

To move an object on the screen (such as an icon in your own program), we can use a combination of the MOUSE functions and the GET and PUT commands. Here's one way to do this (Program 7-6) . Lines 50-70 draw a simple picture on the screen in the upper left corner. Line 80 GETs the information and stores it in array A (dimensioned in line 30 ).

Line 100 checks to see whether the left mouse button has been pressed. If not, the program stays at line 100 . When the button is pressed, the current $x$ and $y$ position is checked with MOUSE(1) and MOUSE(2). If it is different from the previous position, lines $130-150$ redraw the picture with PUT, and $x$ and $y$ are reinitialized.

## Program 7-6. Moving

```
1| REM MOVING
20 DEFINT A,X,Y
30 DIM A(10|0)
40 CLS
50 LINE (\varnothing,0)-(50,50),,BF
60 CIRCLE (25,15),10,0
70 CIRCLE (25,25),15,0
8\emptyset GET (Ø,\emptyset)-(5\emptyset,5\emptyset),A
9\emptyset REM CHECK MOUSE
1ø\emptyset IF MOUSE( }|=|\mathrm{ THEN 1øØ
11\emptyset IF ABS(X-MOUSE(1))>2 THEN 130
120 IF ABS(Y-MOUSE(2))<3 THEN 100
13Ø PUT(X,Y),A
140 X=MOUSE(1):Y=MOUSE(2)
15\emptyset PUT(X,Y),A
160 GOTO l\emptyset\emptyset
170 END
```

If you want to move and not erase as you go, you can create some interesting graphics. To illustrate, we will draw a circle, then let you draw with that circle by moving the mouse and pressing the left button.

## Chapter 7

## Program 7-7. Drawing2

10 REM DRAWING2
20 DEFINT A, X,Y:DIM A(3ØD)
30 CLS
46 CIRCLE $(8,8), 8$
$5 \|$ GET $(\varnothing, \varnothing)-(16,16), A$
$60 \operatorname{IF} \operatorname{MOUSE}(\varnothing)=0$ THEN $6 \emptyset$
$7 \varnothing \mathrm{X}=\mathrm{MOUSE}(1): \mathrm{Y}=\mathrm{MOUSE}(2)$
$8 \emptyset \operatorname{PUT}(X, Y), A$
$9 \varnothing$ GOTO $6 \varnothing$
$10 \varnothing$ END

## C. Chapter 8-3.

Grophics

$\square$
$\square$ $\square$ 0

## Chapter 8

## Graphics

Graphics on the Amiga can be a lot of fun. Many of the basic programs in this book can be enhanced by adding graphics. This book, however, is designed for beginning programmers and thus the graphics programming will be limited. COMPUTE! is publishing articles and other books which will go into more detail about the many graphics capabilities of the Amiga.

The standard output screen is 640 pixels (dots) wide and 200 pixels high, which gives you a total of 128,000 individual dots which can be used in your pictures.

## Printing in Color

The simplest form of graphics involves printing text in different colors. This device can be used in regular, nongraphic programs to highlight error messages or other important prompts to the program user or to separate the program's messages from the user's input. To print in different colors on the standard screen, use the command
COLOR $f, b$
where $f$ is the value of the foreground color and $b$ is the background color value. The colors are numbered from 0 through 3. For example, this will print black letters on an orange background rather than the standard white on blue.

## COLOR 2,3 <br> PRINT "HELLO."

You can add interest and draw attention to certain lines by varying the COLOR command before your PRINT statements.

## Drawing Lines

Many of the drawing commands use coordinates in parentheses, listed as $(x, y)$ where $x$ is the distance from the left of the screen going toward the right. The upper left corner of the screen is $(0,0)$. The $y$ coordinate is the distance down the screen. For example, $(10,20)$ would be 10 pixels across and 20 pixels down.

The LINE command is the basic drawing command to go from one point to another. Program 8-1 illustrates several forms of the LINE command.

Line 20 is the basic LINE command to draw from the first point $(10,10)$ to the second point $(50,40)$ using coordinates $(x, y)$ from the upper left corner of the screen. Line 30 uses the same type of command. Line 40 illustrates a LINE command that starts at the last point drawn and goes to the specified point. These two lines will create a drawing that will go from $(20,50)$ to $(60,75)$ and then to $(70,60)$.

You'll notice that the previous lines are drawn in white, the default color. You may specify a color number right after the second coordinate if you prefer a different color. Line 50 draws a black line.

The LINE command has some added options. Line 60 illustrates the Box option, indicated by a $B$ after the color number. This command will draw a box with the upper left corner at the first coordinate set $(10,100)$ and the lower right corner at the second coordinates $(30,120)$. It will be outlined in color number 3 , which is orange.

In line 70, BF is the Box Filled option, or a box that is colored in. If you want just to use the default color, you don't need to specify the color number, but you do need to use the right number of commas. Line 80 draws a Box Filled with the default color white.

## Program 8-1. Line

| 10 | REM LINE |
| :---: | :---: |
| 20 | LINE (10,10)-(50,40) |
| 30 | LINE (20,50)-(60,75) |
| 40 | LINE - 70,60$)$ |
| $5 \emptyset$ | LINE (80,80)-(130,70), 2 |
| 60 | LINE (10,100)-(30,120),3,B |
| $7 \varnothing$ | LINE ( 40,110$)-(65,140), 2, B F$ |
| $8 \emptyset$ | LINE (80,105)-(10ø,130),,BF |
| 90 | END |

With just the LINE graphics command you can create beautiful designs. Draw the lines in certain patterns or in a certain sequence. Program 8-2 draws lines using three nested FOR-NEXT loops.

```
Program 8-2. Lines
10 REM LINES
20 CLS
30 Xl=320:Y1=\emptyset:X2=320:Y2=199
40 M=X1:N=X2
4 5 ~ F O R ~ J = 1 ~ T O ~ 5
5Ø FOR C=\emptyset TO 3
60 FOR I=1 TO 8
7\emptyset LINE (X1,Y1)-(X2,Y2),C
80 LINE (M,Y1)-(N,Y2),C
90 Xl=X1-5: X2=x2+5
100 M=M+5:N=N-5
110 NEXT I
120 NEXT C
130 NEXT J
140 END
```

Next, in Program 8-3, we'll use the LINE command with the BF option to draw boxes. Two loops are used to draw the pattern. This time, IF-THEN statements are used instead of FOR-NEXT loops.

## Program 8-3. Boxes

```
10 REM BOXES
2\emptyset C=1:X=\emptyset:Y=\emptyset:CLS
30 LINE(X,Y)-(X+50,Y+50),C,BF
40 C=C+1:IF C=4 THEN C=1
50 X=X+20:Y=Y+10
60 IF Y <=130 THEN 30
7| LINE(X,Y)-(X+5|,Y+5\emptyset),C,BF
8\emptyset C=C+1:IF C=4 THEN C=1
90 X=X+20:Y=Y-1\emptyset
10| IF Y>0 THEN 70
110 END
```

A lot of interesting graphics effects are done by using the CIRCLE command. The basic form of the CIRCLE command is to specify a pair of coordinates which is the center of the circle, then a radius, then optionally the color of the circle.

Program 8-4 contains the CIRCLE command in lines 30 and 60 . The center point is always the same- $(320,100)$-or about the middle of the screen. Concentric circles are drawn in a loop with the radius, $R$, increasing each time. Then the circles are drawn with the background color 0 , which in effect erases the present circles. These circles are drawn with a decreasing radius. Line 90 changes the color of the drawing. Line 100 creates an endless loop, so to stop the program press CTRL-C to break or use the mouse to select Stop under the Run menu.

```
Program 8-4. Circles
10 REM CIRCLES
20 CLS:C=1
30 CIRCLE (320,100),R,C
40 R=R+4
50 IF R<1\emptyset\emptyset THEN 30
60 CIRCLE (320,10\emptyset),R,0
70 R=R-4
80 IF R>& THEN 60
90 C=C+1:IF C=4 THEN C=1
100 GOTO 3|
110 END
```

Just as there are several options in the LINE command, there are several in the CIRCLE command. The number right after the center coordinates is the radius. After the radius number is the color number. The next two numbers are a starting point and an ending point, so you may draw an arc, or part of a circle. The last number is the aspect, or the height/width ratio. The numbers after the radius are optional.

Here's a program (Program 8-5) which illustrates several kinds of CIRCLE commands. Line 20 draws a circle using color 2, black.

Line 30 draws a circle with color 3 . This command specifies a starting point of 0 and an ending point of 3.14159 (which is approximately pi). Keep in mind that these numbers are expressed in radians. The starting point may be left out and would be assumed to be 0 , which is at the three o'clock position on a round clock face. The direction is counterclockwise.

You do not have to start at 0 , of course, and line 40 draws a circle starting at pi radians (at the left side of the circle) and going to 6 .

The aspect number gives the height/width ratio to make the circle into an ellipse. If this number is not specified, the default value is 1 , a circle. Line 50 draws an ellipse that has a ratio of 2 . Note that if some of the optional numbers are left out, the commas are still necessary. Line 60 draws an ellipse with a fractional ratio, .33 . Again, the starting and ending point are not specified, so the ellipse is complete.

Line 70 draws an arc of an ellipse by specifying the starting point of 1 , the ending point of 3 , and a height/width ratio of 1.5.

## Program 8-5. Circles2

```
1\varnothing REM CIRCLES2
2\emptyset CIRCLE ( 30,50),20,2
30 CIRCLE ( }100,50),30,3,0,3.1415
40 CIRCLE (130,50),40,1,3.14159,6
50 CIRCLE ( }190,50),25,\ldots,
60 CIRCLE (100,90),25,3,.,.33
70 CIRCLE (100,170),40,2,1,3,1.5
8\emptyset END
```


## Painting on the Amiga

The PAINT command is used to fill in screen areas with color. (It must be used in a window that has been defined with a type of 16 through 31.) The command specifies the coordinates of a point where painting is to start, then a hue number. The next number, the border color at which to stop, is optional.

The following short program (Program 8-6) illustrates the PAINT command. Line 20 defines a WINDOW with the type of 24 . Line 30 draws a circle; then the next line draws a line that goes through the circle. Line 40 paints starting at point $(40,50)$, which is the lower part of the circle, and uses color number 3 . The next line paints the upper part of the circle because it starts at the point $(60,50)$. It paints with the color 2 , black, and goes to the border of color 3 , the orange circle outline.

## Program 8-6. Paint

```
10 REM PAINT
2\emptyset WINDOW 2,"PAINTING",(1\varnothing\varnothing,1\varnothing)-(200,1\varnothing\varnothing),24
30 CIRCLE (50,50),30,3
    LINE (20,20)-(100,10\emptyset),3
40 PAINT (40,50),3
    PAINT (60,50),2,3
50 END
```


## Graphic Patterns

When you draw a line or fill in an area with BF or AREAFILL, the default values are a solid line and a solid fill pattern. However, you can change both these patterns with the PATTERN statement. You can use graph paper to draw out a pattern of filled-in squares, then convert each row to its hexadecimal equivalent. The pattern numbers start with $\& H$.

Here's a sample pattern using two defined pattern lines (Program 8-7). First, line 20 draws a box so that you will be able to see the pattern. Without a pattern specification it will be the solid color. Line 30 DIMensions the integer variable PAT\% for two elements. Line 40 and the next line define the pattern for each of the PAT\% elements. These will repeat in a filled area. Line 50 defines the pattern. The first number, \&HFF, defines the pattern for a line. \&HFFFF is a solid line, so this is the same as \&HFF00 and will yield a dotted line. The second specification is the PAT\% array for the filled areas.

Line 60 draws a line using the new pattern. Line 70 draws a box filled with the new pattern.

## Program 8-7. Pattern

```
1\varnothing REM PATTERN
2\varnothing LINE ( }\varnothing,\varnothing)-(४\varnothing,४\emptyset),,B
30 DIM PAT%(1)
4| PAT% ( }|)=&HAAA
    PAT%(1)=&HFFFF
50 PATTERN &HFF,PAT%
60 LINE (0,90)-(90,9Ø)
70 LINE (1\varnothing,1Ø\emptyset)-(80,150),,BF
8Ø END
```

Try two different numbers in line 40 , and a different pattern in line 50 . You can see how using different patterns can make some beautiful effects. By the way, changing the line pattern by using PATTERN can affect the cursor when it is in the Output window. For example, the above pattern will make the cursor disappear because of the trailing zeros.

Your pattern in a filled area doesn't have to be just two alternating lines. This next program (Program 8-8) illustrates a pattern array $\mathrm{P} \%$ that contains four elements to define even more intricate fill patterns.

The PATTERN command in line 40 first defines the line, then the fill pattern.

## Program 8-8. Pattern2

```
10 REM PATTERN2
20 DIM P%(3)
30 P%(0)=&HFFFF
    P%(1)=&HAAAA
    P% (2) =&H5555
    P% ( 3) =&H3333
40 PATTERN &H3333,P%
5\emptyset LINE ( }10,10)-(8|,8\emptyset),,B
60 LINE ( }0,90)-(90,9|
70 END
```

Now try changing the hexadecimal numbers in line 30 for the P\% elements. For example,
\&HFAFA
\& hafaF
\&H5353
\&H3535
Or another pattern would be
\& H 6666
\&H1212
\&H4444
\&H7777

## Area Fills

Because it takes up a lot of memory, the PAINT command is very limited with the 256 K Amiga, but AREA and AREAFILL can be versatile enough to do the same thing. AREA commands specify points to be joined in a polygon, then AREAFILL joins those points and fills in the polygon with the default solid color or a specified pattern. You don't actually see anything on the screen after AREA statements until you use the AREAFILL command.

AREA commands can use actual numbers (or variables) specifying coordinates of points, or they can use the STEP option which gives relative distances.

Program 8-9 illustrates how AREA, AREAFILL, and PATTERN can work.

The three AREA statements in line 20 define points for a triangle, and line 30 fills in the triangle. Line 40 uses four AREA statements to define a quadrilateral. Line 50 uses AREAFILL 1 which will use the reverse. You can specify either 1 or 0 , and the default is 0 .

Line 60 DIMensions an array PAT\% with four elements, then the four elements are defined with hexadecimal patterns. Line 70 redefines the fill patterns.

Line 80 starts with a specific AREA point; then STEP indicates go a relative distance from the last point. Line 90 fills in that polygon.

Line 100 illustrates how the PATTERN command changed the line, and line 110 illustrates the pattern in a filled box. Line 120 defines another triangle, and line 130 fills with the reverse.

## Program 8-9. Areas

```
10 REM AREAS
20 AREA (25,10)
    AREA (50,20)
    AREA ( }D,2|
30 AREAFILL
40 AREA (50, 25)
    AREA STEP (20,15)
    AREA STEP (-10,15)
    AREA STEP ( }-10,-10
50 AREAFILL 1
60 DIM PAT%(3)
    PAT% ( }|)=&H5\emptyset
    PAT% ( 1) =&HAØA
    PAT% (2) =&H5|5
    PAT% ( 3 ) =&HAØA
7\emptyset PATTERN &HFFF,PAT%
8\emptyset AREA (1Ø\emptyset,50)
    AREA STEP (50, 20)
    AREA STEP (-50,20)
    AREA STEP (-5\emptyset,-2\emptyset)
    AREA STEP (50,-20)
90 AREAFILL
10\emptyset LINE ( }0,120)-(200,120
11\emptyset LINE (10,130)-(150,170),3,BF
12\emptyset AREA (180,130)
    AREA STEP (30, 20)
    AREA STEP (-50,2\emptyset)
130 AREAFILL 1
140 END
```


## Adding Colors to Your Palette

What about all the colors the Amiga is supposed to have? So far I have simplified the programs by just using the four default colors for the standard screen: 0 , the background blue; 1 , white; 2, black; and 3, orange. These colors can be changed by using Preferences on the Workbench, or you can use the PAL-
 ETTE command.

Think of the PALETTE command as an artist's palette on which you mix colors. For each of the four possible colors, or paint buckets, you can mix a combination of red, green, and blue. The first number in the PALETTE command is one of the paint buckets. The next three numbers are the mixtures in order of red, green, and blue. The numbers can be thought of as
fractions from 0 through 1 . Black is $0,0,0$, or no colors, and white is $1,1,1$, or a mixture of all colors.

Program 8-10 illustrates the PALETTE command by drawing four boxes of the four colors. PALETTE 0 , or the background color, is a mixture of $1,1,1$ which is white. PALETTE 1 , the default drawing and printing color, is a mixture of $0,0,1$. PALETTE 2 is $0,1,0$. PALETTE 3 is $1,0,0$.

## Program 8-10. Palettes

```
10 REM PALETTES
20 PALETTE 0,l,l,l
    PALETTE 1,\varnothing,\varnothing,1
    PALETTE 2,0,1,0
    PALETTE 3,1,0,0
4| FOR C=\ TO 3
    LINE (C* 20, 8\emptyset)-(C* 20+2\varnothing, 120), C,BF
    NEXT C
50 END
```

Now try some fractional mixtures in the above program:

```
paLETTE ø,\varnothing,\varnothing,\varnothing
```

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 1, ., 2, .4, .6 \\
& 2, .1, .5, .4 \\
& 3, .2, .2, .2
\end{aligned}
$$

or
PALETTE $6, .1, .8, .8$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 1, ., 3, .2, .4 \\
& 2, .4, .1, .6 \\
& 3, .8, .5,6
\end{aligned}
$$

You can see that you could spend all day experimenting with colors.

The next program (Program 8-11) can help you experiment with colors. A box of colors appears at the left of the screen. There are three "tubes" for the three colors at the right. A circle appears above one of the paints. Use the arrow keys to move the level of color up or down. Press RETURN to move to the next tube of color. As you adjust the levels with the arrow keys, the numbers above the columns are the numbers to be used in the PALETTE statement to produce the color in the square. The colors start at $0,0,0$.

Line 20 is a FOR-NEXT loop that draws the three boxes for the level indicators. Line 30 draws the large box of color. Line 40 defines the $y$ coordinate for drawing the circle indicating which tube you can change the level on. Line 50 is the number of the tube $T$.

Line 60 defines $X X$ and LL for the $x$ position and level for the particular tube. The circle is drawn above the tube that can be adjusted.

Line 70 detects which key on the keyboard is pressedthe RETURN key, the up arrow key, or the down arrow key. All other keys are ignored. DL is the change in level, which can be -1 or +1 . If the down arrow key is pressed, the line is erased, but if you are moving up, the lines stay drawn.

Line 80 defines LL for the changed level and checks the top and bottom positions. PALETTE changes the color in the box. The new values for the mixtures are printed.

Line 90 is the procedure when the RETURN key is pressed. The circle is erased, the tube number is incremented, and the next tube is available for input.

To stop this program you will need to press CTRL-C or Stop from the menu bar.

## Program 8-11. Palettes2

```
10 REM PALETTES2
20 FOR C=1 TO 3
    CC=C*110+130
    LINE (CC,79)-(CC+10,181),,B
    LINE (CC,18\emptyset)-(CC+1\varnothing,18\emptyset)
    X(C) =CC+5:L(C)=18\varnothing
    NEXT C
3\emptyset LINE (40,1\emptyset)-(12\emptyset,6も),2,BF
40 Y=70
50 T=1
60 XX=X(T):LL=L(T)
    CIRCLE (XX,Y),5
7\emptyset AS=INKEYS:IF AS="" THEN 7Ø
    IF A$=CHR$(13) THEN 90
    IF AS=CHRS(28) THEN DL=-1:GOTO 80
    IF AS<<CHRS(29) THEN 70
    DL=1
    LINE (XX-4,LL)-(XX+4,LL),\varnothing
8\emptyset LL=LL+DL
    IF LL<8\emptyset THEN LL=8\emptyset
    IF LL>18も THEN LL=180
    LINE (XX-4,LL)-(XX+4,LL),l
    P(T)=(18|-LL)/1Ø0:L(T)=LL
    PALETTE 2,P(1),P(2),P(3)
    LOCATE 5,1:PRINT TAB(18+T*14);" "
    LOCATE 5,30:PRINT P(1),P(2),P(3)
    GOTO 70
```


## Chapter 8

```
9\emptyset CIRCLE (XX,Y),5,0
    T=T+1:IF T>3 THEN 50 ELSE 60
100 END
```


## Sprites and Bobs

A whole book can be written about programming moving ob-jects-sprites and blitter objects (bobs). I'll just get you started here. Most of the commands start with OBJECT, and you can just sit at the computer and start experimenting.

To define a shape, use the Object Editor program that comes with the demonstration programs on the same disk as Amiga BASIC. If you are in BASIC, you can load this program with the command

## LOAD "BasicDemos/ObjEdit"

For an example, press 1 to design a sprite. Now use the right mouse button to see the menus on the menu bar. Use the left mouse button to change the size of the object or to choose a color, then to draw with the pen (or use the different shapes). When you have designed an object, press the right mouse button to go to the Project menu and select Save. You will be asked for a title for your work. Remember, if you are saving on a different disk, to use "DF0:". I designed a snake and called it "DF0:SNAKE".

When you are finished designing objects, you can use NEW to get rid of the ObjEdit program and start your own program. The example below (Program 8-12) illustrates how to set up one sprite and shows how some of the commands are used.

OPEN "DFV:SNAKE" FOR INPUT AS 1
is used to OPEN the file containing the information about the object designed using the Object Editor program. The next line reads the information as a string with INPUT\$(LOF(1),1). OBJECT.SHAPE 1 says to define shape number 1 with that previously saved string.

CLOSE 1 closes the file that we will no longer need. OBJECT.X and OBJECT.Y define where the object will start on the screen. The object number 1 is specified, along with the $x$ coordinate and $y$ coordinate. I defined $S X$ and $S Y$ to be the speed in the $x$ direction and the speed in the $y$ direction. OBJECT.VX and OBJECT.VY specify those speeds (velocities) for object number 1.

OBJECT ON makes our sprite visible. Without specifying a number, all objects would become visible. OBJECT.START starts the object in motion. Again, a number can be specified, and no number means all objects.

Line 40 tests to see whether the sprite collided with the border line. If $K$ is 0 , there is no collision and the sprite can keep moving. If $K$ is -1 or -3 , then the top or bottom border was hit and the $y$ velocity needs to be changed; otherwise, the side borders were hit and the x velocity needs to be reversed. GOTO 30 continues the program until you choose Stop on the menu bar or press CTRL-C.

## Program 8-12. Sprite

```
10 REM SPRITE
    OPEN "DFD:SNAKE" FOR INPUT AS l
    OBJECT.SHAPE 1,INPUT$(LOF(1),l)
    CLOSE l
    OBJECT.X 1,20
    OBJECT.Y 1,50
    SX=6|:SY=5|
    OBJECT.VX l,SX
    OBJECT.VY l,SY
    OBJECT.ON
3\emptyset OBJECT.START
40 K=COLLISION(1)
    IF K=\emptyset THEN 4D
    IF K=-1 OR K=-3 THEN SY=OBJECT.VY(1):OBJECT.VY 1,-SY:GOTO
3D
    SX=OBJECT.VX(1)
    OBJECT.VX 1,-SX
    GOTO 3ø
END
```

Use of the object commands is an advanced topic and beyond the scope of this book. See COMPUTE!'s Advanced Amiga BASIC, Inside Amiga Graphics, or COMPUTE!'s Amiga Programmer's Guide for more detailed information. Briefly, here are some of the other commands you might encounter:

OBJECT.AX and OBJECT.AY are accelerations of the object in the x and y directions.

OBJECT.CLIP ( $\mathbf{x} 1, y 1$ )-(x2,y2) defines a rectangle, and objects cannot be drawn outside the area. The default value is the border of the current Output window.

OBJECT.CLOSE id is like closing a file-you use this command when you no longer need an object.

OBJECT.OFF makes an object invisible and stops an object if it was started with OBJECT.START. The object is still available if you use .OFF.

OBJECT.STOP freezes the motion of an object (it will still be visible).

OBJECT.HIT determines collision objects.
OBJECT.PLANES is used with blitter objects to set the bob's planePICK and place-on-off masks.

OBJECT.PRIORITY is used to set priority of bobs, which determines when an object is drawn in relation to other ob-jects-or whether objects are in front of or behind other objects.

$\square$
$\square$ $\square$ 0

## Chapter 9

Music, Sounds, and Speech

$\square$
$\square$ $\square$ 0

## Music, Sounds, and Speech

The basic command to produce a musical tone on the Amiga is SOUND $f, d, v, c$
where $f$ is a frequency (pitch), $d$ is duration, $v$ is volume, and $c$ is the audio channel from 0 through 3.

The frequency is a number for the standard cycles per second for a tone, such as 440 for an A note. The Amiga BASIC manual has a chart, or you may want to make your own using musical staff paper.

The duration is a number for the length of time you want a tone to play.

The volume may be a number from 0 through 255 , where 255 is the loudest. If you leave the volume parameter out of the statement, the default value is 127 .

When you're using SOUND statements to program the computer to play a tune, it's a good idea to use a variable for the duration. For example, let T represent the length of a quarter note. T/2 would be an eighth note; $\mathrm{T}^{*} 2$, a half note; and $\mathrm{T}^{*} 4$, a whole note. Try this short tune:

## Program 9-1. Music1

```
10 REM MUSICl
20 T=1\varnothing
30 SOUND 330,T
40 SOUND 294,T/2
5ø SOUND 262,T/2
60 SOUND 294,T
70 SOUND 330,T*1.5
80 SOUND 349,T/2
9ø SOUND 392,4*T
1 0 0 ~ E N D
```

Now suppose you want to play the tune twice as fast. With a variable duration you need to change only line 20, not all of the SOUND statements. Try $\mathrm{T}=5$.

To make the tune slower, try $\mathrm{T}=20$. The notes stay in the right proportion. Line 30 is a quarter note, for example. Lines 40,50 , and 80 are eighth notes. Line 70 is a dotted quarter note. Line 90 represents a whole note.

The frequencies can also be variables specified at the beginning of the program. The note names can be used as the variables to make your program conform somewhat to regular musical notation. Program 9-1 can be written like this:

## Program 9-2. Music2

```
10 REM MUSIC2
20 T=10:C=262:D=294
25 E=330:F=349:G=392
30 SOUND E,T
40 SOUND D,T/2
50 SOUND C,T/2
6 0 ~ S O U N D ~ D , T ~ T
70 SOUND E,T*1.5
8\emptyset SOUND F,T/2
9ø SOUND G.4*T
10% END
```

DATA statements can shorten the program if you are using lots of SOUND statements. Here's the same tune using DATA:

## Program 9-3. Music3

```
10 REM MUSIC3
```

```
20 T=1
```

30 FOR N=1 TO 7
40 READ F,D
50 SOUND $\mathrm{F}, \mathrm{D}^{*} \mathrm{~T}$
60 NEXT N

## Chapter 9

76 DATA $330,1,294, .5,262, .5,294,1,330,1.5,349, .5,392,4$
80 END
If you read music, you can use this method to translate sheet music to the computer.

## Switching Channels

If you want more than one tone at a time, as a chord, you can use the four channels of sound.

Here's a short tune (Program 9-4) that uses the four channels. The music information is contained in DATA statements, in the order duration factor D and then four frequency numbers to go with the four channels.

Line 20 sets a time of 4 . When a duration factor D is read in, it is multiplied by T for the total duration. Line 30 reads the value for D . If D is 0 , it indicates the end of the data and the program branches to the end.

Lines $40-70$ are a FOR-NEXT loop that reads the four frequencies. For each frequency, the SOUND statement starts the music. F is the frequency, and the counter S is also used in the SOUND statement. S is first used to set the volume-the upper notes are played louder than lower notes. $S$ is also used for the channel number.

Line 80 transfers control back to the READ statement for the next set of numbers. This music is from the Rondo section of Beethoven's Fifth Concerto.

## Program 9-4. Rondo

```
10 REM RONDO
20 T=4
30 READ D:IF D=Ø THEN 1600
40 FOR S=\emptyset TO 3
50 READ F
60 SOUND F,D*T,15|-S*20,S
70 NEXT S
8| GOTO 2\emptyset
90 DATA 2,466,392,311,156
100 DATA 2,622,392,311,233
110 DATA 2,622,466,392,196
120 DATA 2,784,466,392,196
130 DATA 2,26,20,20,233
140 DATA 1,784,622,466,196
150 DATA 1,932,20,26,26
160 DATA 1,932,784,622,156
170 DATA 1,1244,26,20,26
180 DATA 2,1244,932,784,233
196 DATA 2,1244,932,784,196
```


## Chapter 9

```
2,W DATA 2,1244,932,784,156
216 DA'TA 2,26,26,20,233
22も DATA 1,1244,932,784,156
23v DATA 1,1568,932,784,156
246 DATA 2,1396,932,698,349
256 DATA 2,20,26,20,233
26も DATA 1,1168,932,698,268
276 DATA 1,1390,932,698,268
28\emptyset DATA 2,1244,932,784,156
29| DATA 2,1244,932,784,233
300 DATA 1,784,622,196,156
316 DATA 1,932,022,196,156
320 DATA 2,932,698,587,117
336 DATA 2,932,698,587,233
340 DATA 1,932,698,587,175
356 DATA 1,886,698,587,175
366 DATA 4,932,698,587,117
37も DATA &
loUS END
```

The Amiga＇s musical abilities can be used in a wide variety of ways－for fun，for learning basic skills，and for sharpening your musicianship．You can put music into the computer and then sing with it．Or you can play a solo instrument with the computer playing the accompaniment．The Amiga is especially good for learning music，because you can immediately hear any changes you want to implement as you are composing．

Or，if you are trying to learn a piece that has a difficult rhythm，program it on your Amiga．Play it first at a slow tempo，then gradually increase the tempo as you practice along with the computer．

In addition，musical tones work well in interactive pro－ grams．You can use a sound for a prompt or a happy musical interlude for correct responses．

With some experimentation you can make many different sounds with the computer．The best way to learn to program the music is to sit at the computer and experiment．
＂Notes＂is an educational program that illustrates the use of the SOUND command．This program is designed for the beginning music student．The first option，Keyboard，shows the letter names of the keys on a piano or organ keyboard and then presents a drill of ten keys chosen at random．A question mark appears under a key，and the student must press the cor－ rect letter name．When the correct letter is pressed，the name of the key appears and that tone is played．

The second and third options are Treble Clef and Bass Clef．These two sections display the appropriate staff and clef， and present words and phrases to help the student remember
the letter names of the notes. A drill of ten notes is then presented.

An array $\mathrm{S} \$$ is used to keep track of the letter names of the notes, and $S$ is the array to save the frequencies of the corresponding notes. In the Keyboard section, notes from 0 through 18 are used. In the Treble Clef and Bass Clef sections, notes from 1 through 9 are used.

## Program 9-5. Notes

```
10 REM NOTES
20 DIM S$(18),S(18)
50 CLS
60 LOCATE 5,10:PRINT "LET'S LEARN NOTES"
7\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "CHOOSE:":PRINT
8\emptyset PRINT "l KEYBOARD"
90 PRINT "2 TREBLE CLEF"
1ø| PRINT "3 BASS CLEF"
1l\emptyset PRINT "4 END PROGRAM"
12\emptyset E$=INKEY$:IF ES="" THEN 120
130 IF ES<"l" OR ES>"4" THEN 12|
140 CLS:RANDOMIZE TIMER
145 ON VAL(ES) GOTO 750,1280,1880,2120
150 REM KEYBOARD
160 CLS:LINE(\varnothing,\varnothing)-(64\varnothing,7\varnothing),1,BF
17| FOR I=24 TO 640 STEP 32
180 LINE(I,\emptyset)-(I,70),2
190 NEXT I
20ø RESTORE 210
210 DATA 48,80,144,176,208,272,304
215 DATA 368,400,432,496,528,596
220 FOR I=1 TO 13
230 READ A
240 LINE(A, }|)-(A+16,48),2,B
250 NEXT I
260 RETURN
27\emptyset LOCATE 23,1:PRINT "PRESS <RETURN> TO CONTINUE.";
290 E$=INKEY$:IF E$="" THEN 290
30\emptyset IF ASC(E$)<>13 THEN 290
310 CLS:RETURN
320 REM CDE
330}\operatorname{LINE}(192,36)-(336,116),1,B
340 LINE(240,96)-(240,116),2
35\emptyset LINE (288,96)-(288,116),2
360 LINE (228,36)-(252,96),2,BF
370 LINE (276,36)-(30|,96),2,BF
380 LOCATE 16,28:PRINT "C"
390 RETURN
40Ø REM STAFF
410 FOR I=43 TO 107 STEP 16
420 LINE ( }0,I)-(64|,I),
430 NEXT I
440 RETURN
450 REM TREBLE CLEF
460 LOCATE 2,18:PRINT "TREBLE CLEF NOTES"
470 LINE (76,118)-(84,122)
```


## Chapter 9


$78 \varnothing$ PRINT:PRINT " The musical keyboard has groups of 3 blac k keys alternating"
790 PRINT " with groups of 2 black keys."
$8 \varnothing \emptyset$ PRINT:PRINT " Each white key has a letter name."
810 PRINT " We use the letters A B C D E F G."
820 RESTORE 840
83Ø FOR I=Ø TO 18:READ S\$(I),S(I):NEXT I
840 DATA B, 247, C, 262, D, 293, E, 330, F, 349, G, 393, A, 440, B, 494
850 DATA C,523,D,587,E,659,F,698,G,783, A, 880, B, $988, \mathrm{C}, 1847$
860 DATA D,1175,E,1319,F,1397
87ø GOSUB 270
880 PRINT "One of the easiest keys to find is 'C'."
890 GOSUB 33y
900 GOSUB 270
910 GOSUB 160
92ø LOCATE 10,6:PRINT "C";TAB(34);"C";TAB(62);"C"
930 GOSUB 270
940 PRINT "' $D$ ' is between the two black keys and ' $E$ ' is on $t$
he right."
960 GOSUB 336
971 LOCATE 16,34:PRINT "D E"
$98 \doteq$ GOSUB 275
990 GOSUB 160

$\begin{array}{lcccccccc}\text { D E F } & \text { F } & \text { A } \\ \text { løl } & \text { PRINT: PRINT } " & \text { C } & \text { Notice the letter names repeat." }\end{array}$
1020 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT " NOW FOR A QUIZ ..."
1030 GOSUB 270
1040 GOSUB 160

## Chapter 9

```
105め LOCATE 15,10:PRINT "NAME THE NOTE"
1060 PK=-1
1076 FOR T=1 TO 10
1ø8ض N=INT(19*RND):IF N=PK THEN 1ø8
1096 \(\mathrm{PK}=\mathrm{N}: C=4 * \mathrm{~N}+1\)
1110 LOCATE \(10, \mathrm{C}:\) PRINT "?"
1120 LOCATE 16,C:PRINT " "
1136 AS=INKEYS:IF AS="" THEN lllø
1140 IF A \(=S \$(N)\) THEN \(117 \varnothing\)
1150 SOUND 256,4:SOUND 2øø,4
116も GOTO lll凶
1170 SOUND \(S(N), 40\)
1180 LOCATE 10,C:PRINT S\$(N)
1190 FOR DELAY=1 TO 5णめり:NEXT DELAY
1200 LOCATE 10,C:PRINT " "
1210 NEXT T
1220 LOCATE 15,10:PRINT "G O O D W OR K l"
1230 FOR I=1 TO 26
124め SOUND 1øめも*RND+523.2
\(125 \emptyset\) NEXT I
1260 GOTO 50
1270 REM TREBLE CLEF
1280 REM
1290 GOSUB 410:GOSUB 460
1306 RESTORE 1310
1310 DATA \(\mathrm{F}, 698, \mathrm{E}, 659, \mathrm{D}, 587, \mathrm{C}, 523, \mathrm{~B}, 494, \mathrm{~A}, 440, \mathrm{G}, 392, \mathrm{~F}, 349, \mathrm{E}\),
330
1320 FOR I=1 TO 9:READ S\$(I),S(I):NEXT I
133i LOCATE 18,2:PRINT "The names of the notes on the spaces
    spell the word FACE."
135ø SOUND 349,6:LOCATE 13,28:PRINT "F"
1360 SOUND 440,6:LOCATE 11,32:PRINT "A"
137ø SOUND 523,6:LOCATE 9,36:PRINT "C"
1380 SOUND 659,6:LOCATE 7,40:PRINT "E"
139ø GOSUB 27ø
1400 GOSUB 410:GOSUB 46Ø
1410 LOCATE 17,2:PRINT "Learn this phrase to help you rememb
er the notes on lines."
1420 PRINT:PRINT " The first letter of each word is the lett
er name of the note."
1430 PRINT:PRINT TAB(24);"EVERY GOOD BOY DOES FINE."
1440 SOUND 330,6:LOCATE 14,24:PRINT "Every"
1450 SOUND 392,6:LOCATE 12,36:PRINT "Good"
1460 SOUND 494,6:LOCATE 10,46:PRINT "BOY"
147も SOUND 587,6:LOCATE 8,54:PRINT "Does"
1480 SOUND 698,6:LOCATE 6,64:PRINT "Fine"
149ø GOSUB 27も
150ø GUSUB 410:GOSUB 46ø
1510 LOCATE 18,20:PRINT "NAME THE NOTE"
\(152 \emptyset \mathrm{PN}=\varnothing\)
1530 FOR T=1 TO 10
1540 N=INT(9*RND)+1:IF N=PN THEN 1540
1550 PN=N:C=5+N:D=C*8-11
\(1560 \mathrm{I}=260: \mathrm{J}=28\) も
1570 FOR R=D TO D+4
1580 LINE ( \(\mathrm{I}, \mathrm{R}\) )-( \(\mathrm{J}, \mathrm{R}\) ), 3
\(159 \varnothing\) I=I-2:J=J+2:NEXT R
\(160 \emptyset\) LINE (I, D+5)-(J,D+8),3,BF
1610 FOR R=D+9 TO D+13
162b I=I+2:J=J-2
1630 LINE (I,R)-(J,R),3
```


NEXT I
177 6 NEXT T
1780 LOCATE 18,20:PRINT "G R E A T $\downarrow$ d"
1790 FOR T=1 TO 2も
1800 SOUND 1あわり*RND+523,2
1810 NEXT T
$182 \emptyset$ PRINT:PRINT "TRY AGAIN? (Y/N)"
1830 ES=INKEY\$:IF E\$="N" THEN 5D
1840 IF ES<>"Y" THEN 1830
1850 LOCATE 20,1:PRINT" "
1860 GOTO 1510
1870 REM BASS CLEF
1880 REM
1890 GOSUB 410:GOSUB 610
19ø0 LOCATE 16, 2:PRINT "Phrases to learn the bass clef notes
refer to animals."
1910 PRINT " For the notes on spaces, remember:"
1920 PRINT:PRINT TAB(28);"ALL COWS EAT GRASS."
1930 SOUND 110,6,255:LOCATE 13,28:PRINT "A11"
1940 SOUND 131,6,255:LOCATE 11,38:PRINT "COWs"
1950 SOUND 165,6,255:LOCATE 9,50:PRINT "Eat"
1960 SOUND 196,6,255:LOCATE 7,60:PRINT "Grass"
1970 GOSUB 270
1980 GOSUB 410:GOSUB 610
1990 LOCATE 17,1:PRINT "For the line notes use this phrase:"
20Øわ PRINT:PRINT TAB(24);"GREAT BIG DOGS FIGHT ANIMALS."
2010 SOUND 98,6,255:LOCATE 14,24:PRINT "Great"
2020 SOUND 123,6,255:LOCATE 12,36:PRINT "Big"
2030 SOUND 147,6,255:LOCATE 10,44:PRINT "Dogs"
2040 SOUND 175,6,255:LOCATE 8,54:PRINT "Fight"
2050 SOUND 220,6,255:LOCATE 6,66:PRINT "Animals"
2060 RESTORE 207も
$207 \triangleq$ DATA A, $220, \mathrm{G}, 196, \mathrm{~F}, 175, \mathrm{E}, 165, \mathrm{D}, 147, \mathrm{C}, 131, \mathrm{~B}, 123, \mathrm{~A}, 110, \mathrm{G}$,
98
2080 FUR I=1 TO 9:READ S\$(I),S(I):NEXT I
2090 GOSUB 270
21も0 GOSUB 410:GOSUB 610
2110 GOTO 1510
2120 END

## Creating Different Sounds

By varying the WAVE value of a voice，you can produce many different sounds on the Amiga．The default WAVE is a sine wave，a pure tone．To make the tone sound different，you can change the WAVE pattern．For example，for a noise the pattern is erratic．Then，of course，you can change the WAVE for each

## Chapter 9

of the four voices and combine those for all sorts of variations in sound.

The WAVE command uses an integer array of 256 numbers (elements $0-255$ ). You will need a DIMension statement near the beginning of the program to reserve space. For example, if we call our array W , we can use
$2 \varnothing$ DEFINT W
36 DIM W(255)
where DEFINT defines W as an integer.
Now you can put different numbers in the W array. For example,
FOR C=ø TO 255
$w(C)=1$
next c
Or you can make a calculation, perhaps a trigonometric function of $C$, for each value of $W(C)$. Or you can read the values from DATA:

```
FOR C=\emptyset TO 255
```

READ W(C)
next C
Now use the WAVE command to set the waveform for a particular channel:

```
WAVE Ø,W
WAVE 1,W
```

You could set each channel to a different array.
To give you an idea of how different numbers in the array affect the sound, try the next program. I have used the tone of concert A (frequency 440). First the tone is sounded with the default waveform:

```
WAVE \(\emptyset, S I N\)
```

SOUND 440,60
A graph of the sine wave is drawn on the screen. The numbers in the array can be from -127 to +127 , so the borders of the screen will be the boundaries. Use the mouse to
move to a particular point and press the left mouse button to change that particular array element to a different number. You can hold the left mouse button down as you slowly move in the $x$ direction if you want each element to change gradually. The new element number values are graphed, and 440 is played.

If you want to know all the values for the elements so that you can put them in DATA statements, get the tone you want and then press RETURN. Then click the left mouse button once. The values are printed on the screen.

In the program, line 20 defines all variables starting with $\mathrm{W}, \mathrm{T}, \mathrm{J}$, and K to be integers. Line 30 DIMensions the array W for the 256 elements. Line 40 is the default WAVE, and line 50 sounds 440 so that you can hear the default sound on channel 0 .

Lines 60-130 draw the graph of the sine wave. Line 140 changes the waveform to the new array $W$, which at first is a scaled sine wave where the numbers are whole numbers between -127 and +127 . Line 150 sounds the frequency of 440. The next two lines check to see whether the RETURN key was pressed.

Line 160 checks to see whether the left mouse button is pressed. Line 170 ignores any mouse activity beyond the right side of the graph. Any up and down movement will affect the last point of the graph. Line 180 erases the original graph line, and lines 190-200 draw the new graph line where the mouse button is pressed. Line 210 changes the particular $W$ element to the new value, then line 220 branches back to change the W array in the WAVE statement and play the tone with the new sound.

Lines 300-310 print the values of all the W elements for use in DATA statements.

## Program 9-6. Sound Wave

```
10 REM SOUND WAVE
2\emptyset DEFINT W,T,J,K
30 DIM W(255)
40 WAVE ©,SIN
50 SOUND 440,60
60 LINE ( }0,1|\emptyset)-(620,1|\emptyset
70 PI=3.14159
8\emptyset F=2*PI/51|
9\emptyset FOR X=\emptyset TO 510 STEP 2
1|\emptyset Y=SIN(F*X)
11| YY=1\varnothingD-4|*Y
    W(X/2)=127-YY*127/10ض
12ø LINE (X,YY)-(X,1|\varnothing)
```

```
130 NEXT X
14\emptyset WAVE Ø,W
150 SOUND 440,2
    RS=INKEYS
    IF R$=CHR$(13) THEN 300
160 IF MOUSE(\varnothing)=\emptyset THEN 16も
17\emptyset J=MOUSE(1):IF J>51| THEN J=51\emptyset
180 LINE(J,\emptyset)-(J,2\emptyset0),0
190 K=MOUSE(2)
20ø LINE (J,K)-(J,1\varnothing0)
21| W(J/2)=127-K*127/1\circlearrowleft凶
22ø GOTO 140
300 WIDTH }7
    LOCATE 20,1
310 FOR T=\emptyset TO 255
        PRINT W(T);.
    NEXT T
END
```


## Making the Amiga Speak

The Amiga has impressive speech capabilities built in. All you need is the Workbench disk.

Just as we set up a wave array for the waveform to hear a certain kind of music, we can set up an array for speech.
There are default values which you can use until you're ready to define your own. The voice characteristics we can define in the array are pitch, inflection, rate, voice, tuning, volume, channel, mode, and control.

Pitch is expressed in hertz and is a number between 65 and 320. The default is 110 , which is a male speaking voice.

The inflection can be 0 for using inflections and emphasizing syllables or 1 for a robot-like monotone.

The rate is a number betwen 40 and 400 words per minute; the default is 150 .

The voice is 0 for male and 1 for female.
The tuning number is the sampling frequency in hertz $(\mathrm{Hz})$. The number can range from a low of 5000 to a high, squeaky 28000. The default is 22200 .

Volume is a number from 0 for no sound to 64 as the loudest.

The channel is the combination of channels and is a value from 0 through 11.

The mode can be 0 for synchronous speech output or 1 for asynchronous speech output.

Control is used when the mode is 1 . It can be 0 for saying one statement and then the next, 1 for canceling the previous statement, or 2 for immediately interrupting the first statement and executing the second one.

The easiest way to define the array (which must be integer) is to use data:

```
FOR T=\ TO 8
READ S%(T)
NEXT T
DATA 110, },250,0,22200,64,1,\varnothing,
```

Once the conditions of speech are set up, you type something for the computer to say. One speech command is SAY TRANSLATE\$. You can use a string of regular English words and the computer will translate it to sounds and speak them. Common pronunciations are used, so you may need to change some spellings to fit the computer's pronunciation. Program 97 is a short example. (Another example came with the BasicDemos on the Amiga BASIC disk).

In the SAY TRANSLATE\$ command, you can use a string in quotation marks, as in line 20 . You can also set up a string variable and use that variable name, as in line $30 . \mathrm{S} \%$ is the array of the speech conditions.

Remember to insert the Workbench disk to run speech programs.

## Program 9-7. Speech

```
REM--SPEECH
1| FOR T=\emptyset TO 5
    READ S%(T)
    NEXT T
20 SAY TRANSLATES("HELLO"),S%
3b M$="THIS IS A TEST."
    SAY TRANSLATE$(MS),S%
    DATA 105,0,144,0,20590,63
```

Another way to get the computer to speak is to use the SAY command using phonemes, which are unique letter combinations representing specific sounds. A description of phonemes is given in the Amiga BASIC manual. You must use only the phonemes on the chart or you will get an error message.

Our next example, Program 9-8, illustrates how you can make the Amiga speak different languages by spelling phonetically with the phoneme method.

Line 10 sets up the speech conditions array S\%. Line 20 defines the five different messages. Line 30 prints the menu screen, and line 40 lets the user choose a language or end the program.

## Program 9-8. Language

```
REM--LANGUAGE
10 FOR T=\emptyset TO 5
            READ S%(T)
    NEXT T
    DATA 105,0,144,0,20590,63
20 TEXT$(1)="AHN DUH TWAA KAETR SEYNK SIYS SEHT WIYT NAHF DI
YS"
    TEXT$(2)="UWNOH DOHS TREYS KWAATROH SIYN KOH SEYS SIY EH
TEH OHCHOH NUWEHVEH DLIYEHS"
    TEXT$(3)="AYNS TZWAY DRAY FIYR FUWNF SEHKS ZIYBAXN AAKT N
OYN TSEYN"
    TEXT$(4)="IYCHIY NIY SAAN SHIY GOH /HIYCHIY /HAACHIY /HRO
HKUW KUW JUW"
    TEXT$(5)="WAHN TUW THRIY FOHR FAYV SIHKS SEHVAXN EYT NAYN
TEHN"
30 PRINT "LANGUAGE"
    PRINT:PRINT
    PRINT "CHOOSE:"
    PRINT " 1 FRENCH"
    PRINT " 2 SPANISH"
    PRINT " 3 GERMAN"
    PRINT " 4 JAPANESE"
    PRINT " 5 ENGLISH"
    PRINT " 6 END PROGRAM"
40 AS=INKEY$
    IF AS<"l" OR AS>"6" THEN 40
    IF A$="6" THEN 50
    SAY TEXTS(VAL(AS)),S%
    GOTO 40
50 CLS:END
```


$\square$
$\square$ $\square$ 0

## Chapter 10

Built-In
Dunctions

$\square$
$\square$ $\square$ 0

## Built-In Functions

Commands like RUN, GOSUB, and PRINT start a BASIC statement and control what happens in that line. Functions, on the other hand, are like small subroutines within a statement. They return a value or a string. A statement which uses a function must also contain a command that tells what to do with that function.

## String Functions

Usually, the computer treats information as numeric. Certain information, however, is treated as strings, or groups of characters that can be letters, numbers, or symbols. A string is contained in double quotation marks, it can be up to 255 characters, and a string variable name must end with a dollar sign, such as A\$.

Strings in Amiga BASIC are combined, or concatenated, with the plus sign:

PRINT AS+BS
NAMES=FIRST\$+" SMITH"
You cannot combine string and numeric expressions. If you do have numbers and want to use them as strings, use the STR\$ function to change the numeric value to a string:

```
N$=STRS(N)
```

PHONES"586-"+STR\$ (NUMBER)

If you have a string that contains a number character, you can convert it to a numeric value (for example, for calculations) with VAL:

```
A=VAL(AS)
x=x-VAL(z$)
```

All characters handled by a computer have a unique numeric value called the ASCII value (American Standard Code for Information Interchange). ASC $(\mathrm{X} \$$ ) is a function which returns the ASCII value of the first character in a string. If the
string expression to be converted is a constant, it must be contained in quotation marks:

```
```

PRINT ASC("*")

```
```

```
```

PRINT ASC("*")

```
```

$A=A S C(A S)$

This program returns the ASCII value of any character

```
PRINT ASC(C$)
```

```
PRINT ASC(C$)
``` you press on the keyboard:
```

10 REM ASCII CODES

```
26 \(\mathrm{E} \$=\mathrm{INKEY}\) \$
\(3 \varnothing\) IF ES="" THEN \(2 \varnothing\)
40 PRINT Es;ASC(ES)
50 Gото \(2 \varnothing\)
60 END

Press CTRL-C, Break, to end the program.
CHR \$ can be considered the inverse of ASC. CHR\$(x) returns the character represented by the ASCII value \(x\). Try these commands:
```

PRINT CHR\$(48)

```
```

PRINT CHRS(65)

```

This program illustrates the CHR\$ function by printing the characters corresponding to the ASCII values 54-67.
```

10 REM CHR\$

```
\(2 \varnothing\) FOR C=54 TO 67
36 PRINT C;CHRS (C)

40 NEXT C 56 END

Here is a program that illustrates more string functions:

\section*{Program 10-1. Strings}
```

10 REM STRINGS
AS="CHERY"
B
C$="CINDY"
    D$="ROBERT"

```
```

    ES="RANDY"
    F$="BRETT LYNN"
    2凶 PRINT AS;" has a length of";LEN(AS)
30 PRINT LEFTS(B$,4);" is a nickname."
4| PRINT MIDS(CS,2,3)
50 PRINT RIGHTS(DS,4)
60 PRINT RIGHT$(DS,4)+" "+LEFT$(ES,3)
70 P=INSTR(FS," "):PRINT P
8| R=INSTR(2,D$,"R"):PRINT R
9| PRINT S'TRING$(32,"*")
lø# PRINT STRING$(16,65)
110 S$="NAME"+SPACES(5)+"PHONE"
12| PRINT S$
130 IF LEN(DS)>LEN(ES) THEN PRINT D\$
140 END

```

Line 20 illustrates the use of the function LEN. LEN(A\$) returns the length of the string A\$, or the number of characters in the string. LEN("GREETINGS") would be 9 because there are nine letters in the word. In the program, the string \(\mathrm{A} \$\) is CHERY, which has five letters.

LEFT\$, MID\$, and RIGHT\$ get certain portions of a string. LEFT \(\$(X \$, n)\) returns \(n\) characters starting at the left of the string-or the first \(n\) characters of the string. RIGHT\$(X\$, \(n\) ) returns \(n\) characters from the right end of the string, or the last \(n\) characters. \(\operatorname{MID} \$(X \$, s, n)\) returns a string from the middle of the given string. \(X \$\) is the original string, \(s\) is the number of the starting character, and \(n\) is the number of characters in the string you want. MID \(\$(C \$, 2,3)\) says to look at string \(C \$\) and start with the second character and use three characters. Since C\$ is CINDY, this function starts with the second character, I, and takes three letters, so the result is IND.

INSTR is a function used to locate a certain letter or string within another string. In line \(70, \operatorname{INSTR}\left(\mathrm{~F} \$\right.\),'" '" \(\left.^{\prime \prime}\right)\) wants to find the space " " in the string \(\mathrm{F} \$\) and will return the numbered position of that space. The string F\$ is "BRETT LYNN". The string we want to find is the space. It is in position 6 , so the value returned will be 6 . You can specify either constants or variables in the INSTR function. An example of variables is \(\mathbf{X}=\mathbf{I N S T R} \$ \mathbf{X} \$, \mathbf{A} \$\) )
\(X\) will be the position of the first character of \(A \$\) found in \(X \$\).
You may not want to start at the beginning of a string to find another string. You can specify a number (or numeric variable) as the first parameter in the INSTR function and the searching will start with that character instead of the first
character. Line 80 uses this function. R will be the position of " R " in the string \(\mathrm{D} \$\) starting with the second character.

STRING\$ is a handy function if you want to print a long string of one character. STRING \(\$(n, c)\) returns a string of \(n\) number of the character with ASCII value \(c\) or a character specified in quotation marks. Line 90 will print 32 asterisks. Line 100 will print ten of the character corresponding to ASCII value 65 , which is the letter \(A\).

Lines 60 and 110 illustrate how you can combine strings with the plus sign. The functions can be used in combinations. Line 130 illustrates the LEN function to show that you can use the string functions in calculations or comparisons.

\section*{Numeric Functions}

The mathematical functions are three-letter abbreviations with an argument or numeric expression in parentheses. The numeric expression can be either a constant (number) or a variable or expression.
\(\mathrm{ABS}(x)\) returns the absolute value of a numeric expression \(x\). The absolute value of a number is the number itself without a plus or minus sign. \(\mathrm{ABS}(-4)\) is \(4 . \mathrm{ABS}(4)\) is \(4 . \mathrm{ABS}(0)\) is 0.
\(\operatorname{ATN}(x)\) returns the arctangent of the expression \(x\). The arctangent of \(x\) is the angle whose tangent is \(x\). In BASIC, angles are expressed as radians. If you want the equivalent angle in degrees, you can convert by multiplying the radians by \(180 /\) pi, or 57.2957795 .
\(\operatorname{COS}(x)\) returns the cosine of the expression \(x\). Remember that the angle needs to be expressed in radians.
\(\operatorname{SIN}(x)\) returns the sine of the angle \(x\).
TAN \((x)\) returns the tangent of the angle \(x\).
\(\operatorname{EXP}(x)\) gives the exponential function, or the value of e to the \(x\) power.

LOG \((x)\) gives the natural logarithm of \(x\), or \(\log\) of \(x\) with the base e. Remember that the argument or expression \(x\) must be greater than zero. The logarithm and exponential functions are inverses:
\(\mathbf{X}=\operatorname{LOG}(\operatorname{EXP}(\mathbf{X}))\) and \(\mathbf{X}=\operatorname{EXP}(\mathbf{L O G}(\mathbf{X}))\)
\(\operatorname{INT}(x)\) gives the integer function of a number \(x\), which is the whole number part of the number \(x\) if \(x\) is positive and the next smaller whole number if the number \(x\) is negative. Another way to think of the INTeger function is that the result is
the closest integer or whole number to the left of the decimal point of a number.
\(\operatorname{SGN}(x)\) returns the sign of a number \(x\). If \(x\) is negative, \(\operatorname{SGN}(x)\) is equal to -1 . If \(x\) is positive, \(\operatorname{SGN}(x)\) is +1 or 1 . If \(x\) is \(0, \operatorname{SGN}(x)\) is 0 .
\(\operatorname{SQR}(x)\) returns the square root of \(x\).
DEF FN. If you wish to use a function that is not listed here, a combination of these functions, or any sort of formula or equation, you can define your own functions with a DEF statement. You need to define the function before you use the function in a program. It is usually simplest to put DEF statements near the beginning of the program. Here are some examples:
```

DEF FNF(X)=2*X*X-5*X+SQR(X)
DEF FNR(N)=INT(N*RND+1)

```

Our next program, "Stepping," uses the function SGN to see if one note is higher, lower, or the same as another. This program can be used with beginning music students who are learning to read music. Two notes are shown on the staff. The student presses the appropriate arrow key to indicate whether the notes are stepping up, stepping down, or staying the same. CR is the correct response and is calculated with SGN(N2-N1), where N 2 is the second note and N 1 is the first note. If CR is 1 , the answer is up, if CR is 0 , the notes are the same, and if CR is -1 , the answer is down.

Lines \(20-90\) clear the screen, and print the title and instructions. Lines 100-130 read from data the frequency \(F\) and the \(y\) coordinate \(Y\) for each of nine notes. Lines 140-150 wait for the student to press the space bar to start.

Line 160 performs the quiz for ten problems. Lines 180-200 draw the staff of five lines. Lines 210-280 draw the labels and arrows.

Line 290 randomly chooses the two notes N1 and N2. Line 300 calcultes CR, which is the difference between the notes. Lines 310-380 draw the two notes using Z as the relative y coordinate.

Line 390 makes a prompting sound, then lines 400-425 detect which arrow key is pressed. Line 430 checks the answer, and, if the answer is incorrect, line 440 plays an \(u h\)-oh sound and line 450 transfers back to line 390 to get another
answer. The answer must be correct to continue. Line 460 prints the message for a correct answer, then line 470 plays the two notes shown. Line 480 delays, then line 490 goes to the next problem.

At the end of the quiz, lines \(500-520\) play a tune of random notes. Lines \(530-550\) present an option to try again. Lines 560-570 clear the screen and end the program.

\section*{Program 10-2. Stepping}
```

1\varnothing REM STEPPING UP OR DOWN
20 CLS
30 PRINT:PRINT TAB(30);"STEPPING UP OR DOWN"
4| PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
50 PRINT "You will see two notes."
60 PRINT:PRINT "From the first one, do you step up, step down,"
7% PRINT:PRINT "or stay the same to play the second note?"
8\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "Use the arrow keys."
90 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
100 FOR C=1 TO 9:READ F(C),Y(C):NEXT C
110 DATA 330,110,349,100,392,90
120 DATA 440,80,494,70,523,60
130 DATA 587,56,659,40,698,30
140 PRINT "Press the space bar to start."
150 S$=INKEY$:IF S\$<>"" THEN 150
160 FOR PROB=1 TO 10
170 CLS:RANDOMIZE TIMER
180 FOR C=4| TO 120 STEP 2\emptyset
190 LINE ( |,C)-(620,C),1
2ø0 NEXT C
210 LOCATE 20,10:PRINT "^ STEP UP";
220 LINE (75,152)-(75,160)
230 PRINT TAB(30);"> STAY THE SAME";
240 LINE (228,155)-(238,155)
250 PRINT TAB(60);"STEP DOWN"
260 LINE (452,150)-(452,158)
270 LINE (448,155)-(452,158)
280 LINE - (456,155)
290 Nl=INT(9*RND) +1:N2=INT(9*RND) +1
306 CR=SGN(N2-N1)
310 Z=Y(Nl)
32| LINE (160,z)-(184,Z+20),3,BF
330 LINE (152,Z+3)-(192,Z+17),3,BF
340 LINE (144,Z+6)-(200, Z+14),3,BF
350 Z=Y(N2)
360 LINE ( 360,z)-( 384,Z+20),3,BF
370 LINE (352,Z+3)-(392,Z+17),3,BF
380 LINE (344,z+6)-(400, z+14),3,BF
39| SOUND 1300,2
4|D AS=INKEYS:IF AS="" THEN 40|
410 A=ASC(AS)
420 IF A<28 OR A>36 THEN 390
425 IF A=28 THEN R=1 ELSE IF A=29 THEN R=-1 ELSE R=\emptyset
430 IF CR=R THEN 460
440 SOUND 165,2:SOUND 131,2
45v GOTO 390
460 LOCATE 23,34:PRINT "CORRECT!"

```

\section*{Chapter 10}
```

476 SOUND F(N1),5:SOUND F(N2),5
48| FOR DELAY=1 TO 360|:NEXT DELAY
4 9 0 ~ N E X T ~ P R O B
50% FOR P=1 TO 25
510 SOUND INT(400*RND)+40y,l
526 NEXT P
530 LOCATE 23,1:PRINT "TRY AGAIN? (Y/N)"
540 AS=INKEY\$:IF AS="Y" OR AS="Y" THEN 16b
550 IF AŞ<>"N" AND AŞ<>"n" THEN 540
560 CLS
576 END

```

\section*{Graphing Functions}

Using the built-in functions and graphics commands to graph mathematical equations on the screen can help you understand mathematical concepts easily and quickly.

To graph simple equations by hand, you first set up an \((x, y)\) coordinate system. You might have an equation such as \(Y=4^{*} X, Y=X^{*} X\), or \(Y=\operatorname{SIN}(X)\). You pick a value for \(X\), solve for \(y\), and plot the point ( \(x, y\) ). Continue this process for several points and you can see the graph of the function. All this manual calculation is tedious work, but fortunately, your computer can come to the rescue-by doing the repetitive work.

The following sample graphing programs define a function with DEF FN. The \(x\) values vary in a loop to get the \(y\) values. The results need to be scaled to look good on the screen. Rather than just plot the point \((\mathrm{X}<\mathrm{Y})\), the programs draw a LINE from \(y\) to the \(x\)-axis to show the graph a little better.

This first program graphs \(\operatorname{SIN}(X)\). Line 30 uses DEF FN to define the function \(F(X)\) as \(\operatorname{SIN}(X)\). Line 40 prints the title. To plot a different function, you can replace \(\operatorname{SIN}(X)\) and change the title. This graph will use positive numbers only, so the left edge of the screen will be the \(y\)-axis. Line 50 uses the LINE command to draw the \(x\)-axis line across the screen and at the middle.

The loop in lines \(60-110\) picks an \(\times\) value and evaluates the corresponding \(y\) value, which is a scaled value of \(\operatorname{FNF}(X)\). The 100 is used to move the \(y\) value to the middle of the screen. Lines 80 and 90 make sure the graphed points don't go off the screen. We really don't need to worry about the limits for the \(\operatorname{SIN}(X)\), but if you want to substitute a different function, it may need those limits.

Line 100 draws a line from the \(y\) value to the \(x\)-axis at the point for \(x\). Line 60 increments the value for \(x\) by 0.2 in each
point evaluated．You can change the scaling factor of 40 in line 70 and the factor 10 in line 100 to get the size graph you want．You also can change the \(x\) values in line 60 ．

\section*{Figure 10－1．Graph of a Sine Wave}


\section*{Program 10－3．Graphing SIN（X）}
```

1% REM GRAPHING SIN(X)
20 CLS
30 DEF FNF(X)=SIN(X)
40 PRINT "SIN(X)"
5| LINE(v,1\Deltav)-(640,1\Deltav)
6% FOR X=\emptyset TO 64 STEP . }
7も Y=lもあ-(46*FNF(X))
80 IF Y<=\emptyset THEN Y=\
90 IF Y>=199 THEN Y=199
l凶y LINE (X*1凶,X)-(X*1凶,1凶凶)
1l| NEXT X
120 E'ND

```
\(\operatorname{SIN}(X)\) is a built－in function，so line 30 could have been omitted and you could have simply used \(\operatorname{SIN}(X)\) in line 70.
However，the use of \(\operatorname{FNF}(X)\) makes this program more general． To graph a different function，you only have to change the function definition in line 30 and change the label in line 40 （or delete line 40）．Try these substitutions for line 30 ：

DEF FNF \((\mathrm{X})=\operatorname{COS}(\mathrm{X})\)
DEF FNF \((X)=X / 12\)
DEF FNF \((X)=X^{*} X / 150\)
DEF FNF \((X)=\) TAN \((X)\)
DEF FNF \((\mathbf{X})=\operatorname{LOG}(X+1)\)
Go ahead and try some functions of your own. Remember, you may want to change some of the scaling factors or spread out your graph by changing the limit and step size in line 60.

Now let's try combining functions on the graph. You can use the same program, but change lines 40 and 70 :
40 DEF FNG \((X)=(1 / 3)^{*} \operatorname{SIN}\left(3^{*} X\right)\) \(70 \mathbf{Y}=100-40^{*}(\mathrm{FNF}(\mathrm{X})+\mathrm{FNG}(\mathrm{X})\) )

The program will keep \(F(X)\) and add it to \(G(X)\). The complete listing should now look like that in Figure 10-2.

\section*{Figure 10-2. Combined Functions}


\section*{Program 10-4. Combining Functions}
```

lv REM COMBINING FUNCTIONS
20 CLS
36 DEF FNF(X)=SIN(X)
4| DEF FNG(X)=(1/3)*SIN(3*X)
5\emptyset LINE(ø,10\emptyset)-(640,10\emptyset)
6\emptyset FOR X=\emptyset TO 64 STEP . }

```

\section*{Chapter 10}
```

70 Y=1|も-4苂(FNF(X)+FNG(X))
8\emptyset IF Y<=\emptyset THEN Y=Ø
9b IF Y>=199 THEN Y=199
L|| LINE (X*1凶,Y)-(X*1\varnothing,l|x)
110 NEXT X
120 END

```

Program 10－4 adds the two functions and graphs the re－ sults．You can change to subtraction by changing the plus to a minus in line 70 or by making one of the defined functions negative．

\section*{Chapter 111}

\section*{10山lucational Programmming}

\section*{Educational Programming}

Many people cite education as the main use for a computer in the home. While a computer will never take the place of a loving parent or schoolteacher, it can be a powerful learning tool for enhancing a child's education. In addition, color graphics and music can add a dimension of fun to the learning process.

The programs presented here are a beginning point-feel free to customize the programs for your own use. Perhaps you can change the music, the graphics, or the colors. Add names of your own students. I used a simple arpeggio for a correct answer; you can substitute your favorite tune. Change a drill to suit your own needs.

\section*{A Drill Program}

There are many kinds of educational programs. Probably the most common type is the drill. "Simple Drill," Program 3-2, in the "Random Numbers" chapter illustrates the basic programming for a drill program using random questions. This structure can be used for any type of drill.

Program 11-1 is a counting drill for young children, consisting of ten problems. Up to seven shapes are displayed in random colors. A random number of objects-up to nineappear on the screen. The child must count the objects and press the correct number. If the answer is incorrect, there is an uh-oh sound. The student must press the right number for the program to continue.

Point out to the child that the numbers are on the top row of keys (below the function keys) or on the number pad at the right side of the keyboard. This program can help children learn the concept of counting objects in a one-to-one relationship.
\(A(I)\) and \(B(I)\) are the coordinates for each of the nine objects. Line 160 chooses a random number, N , the number of objects from one to nine. Line 170 chooses a random number from 1 through 3 for the color. Line 180 chooses a random number, S , from 1 through 7 for the shape number. The shapes are in different subroutines, and line 210 is an ON -

GOSUB command to go to a particular subroutine depending on the value of S . The loop in lines 190-220 draws the right number of objects.

\section*{Figure 11-1. Counting Shapes}


\section*{Program 11-1. Counting Shapes}
```

10 REM COUNTING SHAPES
20 CLS
30 LOCATE 3,3|
4| PRINT "*.* COUNTING SHAPES **
50 LOCATE 6,3:PRINT "You will see some shapes on the screen.
"
60 PRINT:PRINT " How many shapes are there?"
70 PRINT:PRINT " Press the correct number."
80 FOR J=1 TO 9:READ A(J),B(J):NEXT J
90 DATA 72,40,176,48,288,32,408,44
10\emptyset DATA 96,88,20\emptyset,104,296,84,384,96,496,92
110 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT " PRESS THE SPACE BAR TO START."
120 RANDOMIZE TIMER
13\emptyset AS=INKEY$:IF AS<>" " THEN 13\emptyset
140 FOR P=1 TO 10
150 CLS:FL=|
160 N=INT (9*RND+1)
170 C=INT(3*RND+1)
18\emptyset S=INT(7*RND+1)
190 FOR L=1 TO N
20| X=A(L):Y=B(L)
210 ON S GOSUB 49y,520,58も,690,780,82\vartheta,1\Downarrow40
220 NEXT L
230 LOCATE 22,1:PRINT "HOW MANY OBJECTS? ";
240 AS=INKEY$

```

\section*{Chapter \(\mathbb{1}\)}
```

250 IF AS="" THEN 24|
260 IF AS<"l" OR AS>"9" THEN 250
270 PRINT A\$
28| IF VAL(AS)=N THEN 37%
290 SOUND 330,2:SOUND 262,2
300 FL=FL+l:IF FL<2 THEN LOCATE 22,19:PRINT " ":GOTO 230
31\emptyset FOR L=1 TO N
326 SOUND 1300,2:LOCATE B(L)/8,A(L)/8+1
330 PRINT L
34ø NEXT L
350 FOR D=1 TO 4000:NEXT D
360 GOTO 400
370 SOUND 262,3:SOUND 330,3
38\emptyset SOUND 392,3:SOUND 523,6
390 FOR D=1 TO 2ø0|:NEXT D
400 NEXT P
4 1 0 ~ F O R ~ J = 1 ~ T O ~ 2 5
420 SOUND 90\emptyset*RND+56\emptyset,2
4 3 0 ~ N E X T ~ J ~
440 CLS
450 LOCATE 5,5:PRINT "TRY AGAIN? (Y/N)"
460 AS=INKEYS:IF AS="Y" OR AS="Y". THEN 140
470 IF AS="N" OR AS="n" THEN 106| ELSE 46|
4 8 0 ~ R E M ~ S Q U A R E ~
49\emptyset LINE (X,Y)-(X+48,Y+24),C,BF
50\emptyset RETURN
510 REM TRIANGLE
52ø LINE (X+24,Y)-(X+48,Y+24),C
530 LINE - (X,Y+24),C
540 LINE - (X+24,Y),C
55% RETURN
57\emptyset REM OCTAGON
580 LINE (X+16,Y)-(X+32,Y),C
590 LINE - (X+48,Y+8),C
60\emptyset LINE - (X+48,Y+16),C
610 LINE - (X+32,Y+24),C
620 LINE - (X+16,Y+24),C
630 LINE - (X,Y+16),C
640 LINE - (X,Y+8),C
650 LINE - (X+16,Y),C
6 7 0 ~ R E T U R N
680 REM HEXAGON
690 LINE (X+16,Y)-(X+40,Y),C
7ø\emptyset LINE - (X+56,Y+12),C
710 LINE - (X+40,Y+24),C
720 LINE - (X+16,Y+24),C
730 LINE - (X,Y+12),C
740 LINE - (X+16,Y),C
76| RETURN
77\emptyset REM CROSS
780 LINE (X+16,Y)-(X+32,Y+24),C,BF
790 LINE (X,Y+8)-(X+48,Y+16),C,BF
800 RETURN
810 REM FLOWER
820 LINE (X,Y)-(X+16,Y),C
830 LINE - (X+24,Y+12),C
840 LINE - (X+32,Y),C
850 LINE - (X+48,Y),C
860 LINE - (X+48,Y+8),C
870 LINE - (X+24,Y+12),C
88| LINE - (X+48,Y+16),C

```
```

890 LINE -(X+48,Y+24),C
9øø LINE - (X+32,Y+24),C
910 LINE - (X+24,Y+12),C
92ø LINE - (X+16,Y+24),C
93ø LINE - (X,Y+24),C
946 LINE -(X,Y+16),C
950 LINE - (X+24,Y+12),C
960 LINE - (X,Y+8),C
97ø LINE - (X,Y),C
102\emptyset RETURN
103| REM RECTANGLE
1040 LINE (X,Y+6)-(X+48,Y+18),C,BF
1850 RETURN
1060 CLS
1076 END

```

\section*{Question-and-Answer Quizzes}

Another type of drill is a question-and-answer quiz, such as a history quiz with dates corresponding to events. Any subject can be used with the basic programming idea, and any number of items or questions and answers may be used.

In Program 11-2, an event will be shown on the screen, and the student must type the year the event occurred and press RETURN. The dates and events are contained in the DATA statements. Line 20 defines N as the number of events.

Line 40 sets WIDTH 80 so the printing will be limited on the screen. You may use spaces in your events so the printing looks good and doesn't split words.

Line 100 READs the dates \(D(M)\) and events \(E \$(M)\) from the DATA. Line 110 initializes the score, S , to be zero. S is incremented by one for each correct answer in line 220.

In line 230, the event, \(\mathrm{E} \$\), is set to the null string, " ", so the event will not be chosen again.

If you use questions with words for answers rather than the numbers for dates, change the variable D to a string variable.

\section*{Program 11-2. History Trivia-Ontario}
```

10 REM HISTORY TRIVIA--ONTARIO
20 N=18
30 DIM D(N),ES(N)
40 WIDTH 80:CLS
50 PRINT TAB(l|);"** HISTORY TRIVIA: ONTARIO **"
60 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
70 PRINT "You will be given an event."
80 PRINT:PRINT "What year did it take place?"
90 PRINT:PRINT "Type the year and press <RETURN>."
1|\emptyset FOR M=1 TO N:READ D(M),ES(M):NEXT M
110S=\varnothing

```

\section*{Chapter 11}

\section*{General-Purpose Multiple Choice}

I have seen a number of programs written for multiple-choice tests. The computer is an ideal way to administer such tests because it can mix up the test questions so that each run is different. Each question has four possible answers, and the computer can keep track of the correct answer. However, all of the programs I have seen print the question, then the answers in the same order each time the program is run. Here is a gen-eral-purpose multiple-choice test (Program 11-3) that chooses
questions in a random order without repetition and also rearranges the possible answers in a random order.

I am including computer literacy questions here for an example. Again, you may use any number of questions. Line 300 sets up 20 questions for this quiz. Line 190 DIMensions variables for 30 questions. \(\mathrm{T} \$\) is the question. \(\mathrm{A} \$\) are the answers, and \(B\) is the correct answer. Lines 200-260 read in the questions and answers from the DATA from line 720 to the end. Note that the last DATA statement contains Z's to indicate the end as information is being read in.

S\$ keeps track if a question is used. Line 230 sets each \(\mathrm{S} \$(\mathrm{I})\) equal to " A ". As a question is used, \(\mathrm{S} \$\) is set to " " in line 360 . Lines \(320-330\) provide that if \(S \$\) is " \("\), then another question must be chosen.

Lines 370-390 define \(C(J)\) for the four answers for mixing up the order in which the answers are printed. Line 400 randomly chooses D for the correct answer. Line 410 defines AA\$(D) to hold the correct answer. The C variable for the correct answer is set to zero so that it cannot be used in another position. Lines \(430-490 \mathrm{mix}\) up the order of the answers, making sure the correct answer is in the right position and each answer is used only once. Lines \(500-530\) print the four answers with the four possible choices A, B, C, and D.

Lines \(540-580\) receive the student's answer, making sure it is a letter from A through D (uppercase or lowercase), then print the choice. Line 590 checks to see if the key pressed is the correct choice. Line 600 prints the message for an incorrect answer and prints the correct answer. Line 620 prints CORRECT for a correct answer, then line 630 increments the score, SC. Lines 640-670 wait for the student to press RETURN before going to the next question. Lines 680-700 clear the screen and then print the score.

As you are typing the DATA statements, note that some of the lines have extra spaces. This is to adjust the printing for the WIDTH 77 screen so that words will not be split. If the question contains a comma as part of the printing, the question must be enclosed in quotation marks.

To make a test for a different topic, simply change the questions and answers in the DATA statements, making sure that you have enough questions for a complete quiz. The last DATA statement contains the ZZZ to signal the end.

\section*{Chapter 11}

```

Program 11-3. Multiple-Choice Test
1Ø\emptyset REM MULTIPLE CHOICE TEST
11\varnothing CLS:WIDTH 80
12\emptyset PRINT " *************************"
130 PRINT " * MULTIPLE CHOICE TEST
140 PRINT " ************************"
15\emptyset PRINT:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
160 PRINT "TEST OF 20 QUESTIONS"
170 PRINT:PRINT "PRESS LETTER OF CORRECT"
18\emptyset PRINT "ANSWER FOR EACH QUESTION."
19| DIM T$(3\emptyset),A$(30,4),B(3\emptyset),S$(30),AA$(4)
200 I=1
210 READ TS(I),AS(I, 1),AS(I, 2),AS(I, 3),AS(I, 4),B(I)
220 IF T$(I)="ZZZ" THEN 260
230 S$(I)="A"
24| I=I+1
250 GOTO 210
260 I=I-1
27| PRINT:PRINT "PRESS <RETURN> TO START."
280 K$=INKEY$
290 IF K$<>CHRS(13) THEN 280
300 FOR P=1 TO 20
310 RANDOMIZE TIMER
320 X=INT(I*RND)+1
330 IF SS(X)="" THEN 320
340 CLS
350 PRINT TS(X):PRINT
360 PRINT:S$(X)=""
370 FOR J=1 TO 4
380 C(J)=1
390 NEXT J
40| D=INT(4*RND)+1
410 AAS (D)=AS(X,B(X))
420 C(B(X))=\emptyset
4 3 0 ~ F O R ~ J = 1 ~ T O ~ 4 ~
440 IF J=D THEN 490
450 E=INT (4*RND)+1
460 IF C(E)=\emptyset THEN 45\emptyset
470 AAS (J) =AS (X,E)
480 C(E)=\emptyset
49| NEXT J
50ø FOR J=1 TO 4
510 PRINT CHR$(64+J);". ";AAS(J)
520 NEXT J
530 PRINT:PRINT
540 REM
550 K$=INKEY\$
560 IF K$<"A" OR (K$>"D" AND K$<"a") OR K$>"d" THEN 550
570 IF ASC(K$)>68 THEN K$=CHR$(ASC(K$)-32)
58| PRINT K$:PRINT
590 IF ASC(K$)=64+D THEN 620
60y PRINT "NO, THE ANSWER IS ";CHRS(64+D);"."
6 1 0 ~ G O T O ~ 6 4 0 ~
6 2 \emptyset ~ P R I N T ~ " C O R R E C T " ~ '
630 SC=SC+1
640 PRINT:PRINT "PRESS <RETURN>."
650 K$=INKEY$
660 IF K$<>CHR$(13) THEN 650
6 7 0 ~ N E X T ~ P ~
680 CLS

```

690 PRINT "OUT OF 26 QUESTIONS,"
\(7 \emptyset 0\) PRINT "YOUR SCORE IS ";SC:PRINT:PRINT
710 GOTO 136 D
720 DATA One of the major attractions of a computer is that it
730 DATA has active involvement.,is expensive.,is a status \(s\) ymbol.
740 DATA allows uninvolvement., 1
750 DATA A video game is best described as
760 DATA an expensive toy.,a special purpose computer.,a hom e computer.,
an educational toy., 2
770 DATA The computer owes its flexibility to the fact that it is
\(78 \emptyset\) DATA small., complicated.,programmable.,an electronic dev ice., 3
790 DATA "Because a computer is programmable,"
\(8 \varnothing \varnothing\) DATA it can be used to perform only a limited number of functions.
810 DATA it cannot be used for educational purposes.
\(82 \emptyset\) DATA it cannot be used for entertainment.
836 DATA it can become a general purpose tool., 4
840 DATA The main advantage of a computer as opposed to othe \(r\) calculating devices is its
850 DATA cost.,size., portability., programnable nature., 4
860 DATA Books and manuals that accompany a computer-related product are
870 DATA software.,documentation.,data., compu-forms., 2
880 DATA Visicalc is best described as
890 DATA a tutorial program., an electronic spreadsheet.
9øø DATA an educational program., an entertainment program., 2
910 DATA All of the following are programming languages exce pt
\(92 \emptyset\) DATA BASIC.,Pascal.,Visicalc.,Logo., 3
930 DATA One of the major problems in acquiring computer lit eracy is
940 DATA people need to be skilled in math to use computers.
\(95 \emptyset\) DATA the computer is a very complicated machine.
960 DATA the field has its own lexicon or language.
970 DATA people need a background in logic and statistics., 3 980 DATA The parts of a computer are arranged in such a way as to form
990 DATA a system., a machine.,a subsystem.,an organization., 1

100ø DATA The processing of data in a computer system result \(s\) in the generation of
løl\| DATA a program., readouts.,information.,statistics., 3
1020 DATA "Basically, a computer is intended to produce"
1030 DATA information., data.,statistics., programs., 1
1040 DATA The basic function of a computer is to transform
1050 DATA proyrams into data.
1060 DATA data into programs.
1076 DATA information into data.
\(108 \emptyset\) DATA data into information.,4
1090 DATA "By using a one may connect a computer to \(t\) he telephone to permit computer conferencing."
lløø DATA adapter, connector, conference link,modem, 4
1110 DATA Intangibility is a major characteristic of
\(112 y\) DATA software.,the computer., hardware.,magnetic disks., 1
1130 DATA The use to which a computer is put is called

\section*{Chapter \(\mathbb{1}\)}
```

1140 DATA a program.,a routine.,an application.,a function.,
3
1150 DATA Inside the computer information is represented by
1160 DATA punched cards.,electronic signals.,maynetic tape.,
magnetic disks.,2
ll70 DATA The on/off pattern that is used in the computer is
the basis of the
1180 DATA circuit code.,binary code.,binomial code.,bidecima
l code.,2
119\emptyset DATA "With telecommuting, information is most commonly
transmitted between terminals"
l2|\emptyset DATA by radio.,over telephone wires.
l2l\emptyset DATA via satellite.,by television.,2
1220 DATA A computer program is an example of
1230 DATA hardware.,software.,firmware.,flexware.,2
1240 DATA The first electronic computer was
125\emptyset DATA ENIAC.,ENID.,IBM MARK I.,IBM Cybernaught.,l
l260 DATA The computer is instructed or told what to do by
127\emptyset DATA hardware.,firmware.,software.,smartware.,3
l280 DATA The most significant factor in purchasing a comput
er is
1290 DATA relative cost.,available software.,available hardw
are.,available firmware.,2
l3\emptyset\emptyset DATA Which is the most common type of secondary storage
currently used in personal computers?
l3l\emptyset DATA floppy disks,bubble memory,electric conductors,tun
nel junction memory,l
132\emptyset DATA RAM is used as a measure of
1330 DATA primary storage capacity.,processing power.
l340 DATA processing speed.,word length.,l
135\emptyset DATA ZZZ,Z,Z,Z,Z,\emptyset
1360 END

```

\section*{Homework Helper}

Other valuable uses for the computer, both in class and at home, are in the areas of supplying example problems and answers as well as checking answers to homework problems.

Answering programs allow the student to indicate the type of problem and INPUT the numbers for the calculations; then the program prints the answer. Any type of problem with a formula may be made into this type of answering program. This type of program is helpful when there are many problems to solve that all use the same formula.
"Homework Helper-Factors," Program 11-4, is designed to help a student quickly check the answers to an assignment with problems involving factoring. It is written for problems encountered in the fourth, fifth, and sixth grades. The student should do the class assignment in the usual way, writing the problem down on paper and working it out step by step. This program may then be used to check the answers. The program has four main sections.

Find All Factors. The student enters a number, and all possible factors or divisors of that number are listed from largest to smallest. The list of factors includes the number itself and the number 1. The number to be factored must be greater than 1 and must be a whole number (integer). Example: All the factors of 18 are \(18,9,6,3,2\), and 1 .

Find Prime Factors. Finding the prime factors is also called complete factorization or making a prime factor tree. The student enters a number, and all the prime factors of that number are listed from smallest to largest. Thse numbers multiplied together yield the original number. The student's answer does not have to list the factors in a certain order to be considered correct. This section lists all the factors necessary to obtain the given number. If only the prime factors of a number are desired, the student would still choose this option of the program, and the answer would consist of the list of factors without duplication of numbers. Example: All prime factors of 18 are \(2,3,3\). Prime factors without duplication would be 2 and 3 .

Find Greatest Common Factor. The student enters two numbers. The computer lists the greatest common factor, which is the largest number that can be divided evenly into both the input numbers. If both numbers are prime or if they have no common factors, then the greatest common factor is 1. Example: The greatest common factor of 18 and 24 is 6.

Find Least Common Multiple. The student first indicates whether there are two numbers or three numbers, then inputs those numbers (this is adequate for fifth-grade or sixth-grade mathematics). The program will print the least common multiple, or the lowest number that all the given numbers may be divided into without remainders. This exercise is an introduction to finding least common denominators. Example: The least common multiple of 4 and 12 is 12 . The least common multiple of 4,6 , and 5 is 60 .

After each answer is given, the student has the option of trying another problem or going back to the main menu screen.

The INTeger function is used to help find the factors. In finding all the factors, numbers from 2 to the number are divided into the original number. If the quotient is equal to the INTeger of the quotient, that means the number may be divided evenly and the quotient is a factor. In finding the prime
factors, once a factor is found, the limit in the loop is changed. In finding the greatest common factor, numbers are tested as factors for both the input numbers.

\section*{Program 11-4. Homework Helper-Factors}
```

    10 REM FACTORS
    20 CLS:WIDTH 8|
    30 PRINT TAB(20);STRING$(19,"*")
    4\emptyset PRINT TAB(2\emptyset);"* HOMEWORK HELPER *"
    50 PRINT TAB(20);"*";SPC(17);"*"
    60 PRINT TAB(20);"* FACTORS *"
    7\emptyset PRINT TAB(20);STRINGS(19,"*")
    80 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
    9ø PRINT TAB(l|);"CHOOSE: 1 FIND ALL FACTORS"
    1ø\emptyset PRINT TAB(19);"2 FIND PRIME FACTORS"
    110 PRINT TAB(19);"3 FIND GREATEST COMMON FACTOR"
    120 PRINT TAB(19);"4 FIND LEAST COMMON MULTIPLE"
    130 PRINT TAB(19);"5 END PROGRAM"
    140 C$=INKEY$
    15| IF C$<"l" OR C$>"5" THEN 140
160 ON VAL(C$) GOTO 320,480,630,940,135\emptyset
170 PRINT:PRINT "CHOOSE: l .ANOTHER PROBLEM"
18\emptyset PRINT TAB(10);"2 BACK TO MAIN MENU SCREEN"
190 C$=INKEY\$
200 IF C\$="2" THEN 2ø
210 IF CS<<"l" THEN 19y
220 RETURN
230 PRINT:PRINT
240 INPUT "ENTER NUMBER TO BE FACTORED: ",N
250 IF N>I THEN 27ø
260 PRINT:PRINT "NUMBER MUST BE GREATER THAN ONE.":PRINT:GOT
O 240
27Ø IF N=INT(N) THEN 290
28\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "NUMBER MUST BE A WHOLE NUMBER.":PRINT:GOTO
240
290 IF N<lØ0\emptyset1 THEN 316
3ø\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "PLEASE USE NUMBER LESS THAN 1øøU\emptyset.":PRINT:G
OTO 240
310 RETURN
32ø CLS
330 PRINT "GIVEN A NUMBER, FIND ALL ITS FACTORS."
340 GOSUB 230
350 PRINT:PRINT "FACTORS OF";N;"ARE"
360 PRINT N;
370 B=INT(N/2+1)
380 FOR C=2 TO B
390 IF N/C<>INT(N/C) THEN 430
40\varnothing B=N/C:PRINT B;
410 IF B=1 THEN 450
42\emptyset IF B=2 THEN 44\emptyset
430 NEXT C
440 PRINT " l"
45v PKINT
460 GOSUB 170
470 GOTO 320
480 CLS
490 PRINT "GIVEN A NUMBER, FIND THE PRIME FACTORS,"
5\emptyset\emptyset PRINT "ALSO KNOWN AS COMPLETE FACTORIZATION"

```

\section*{Chapter \(\mathbb{1}\)}
```

510 GOSUB 23ø
520 PRINT:PRINT "THE PRIME FACTORS ARE:"
530 G=INT(N/2)
540 FOR M=2 TO G
55| IF N/M<>INT(N/M) THEN 57@
560 N=N/M:G=N:PRINT M;:GOTO 540
570 NEXT M
580 IF N=1 THEN 600
590 PRINT N
6\emptyset\emptyset PRINT
610 GOSUB 170
620 GOTO 480
630 CLS
64\emptyset PRINT "FIND THE GREATEST COMMON FACTOR OF TWO GIVEN NUMB
ERS."
650 PRINT
660 M=\emptyset:N=\emptyset
67\emptyset INPUT "FIRST NUMBER: ",M
680 IF M>1 THEN 700
690 PRINT:PRINT "ENTER A NUMBER GREATER THAN 1.":PRINT:GOTO
670
700 IF M<lø0めも THEN 720
71\varnothing PRINT:PRINT "MUST BE A NUMBER LESS THAN 1øøø\emptyset.":PRINT:GO
TO 67%
720 IF M=INT(M) THEN 74\
73\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "A WHOLE NUMBER PLEASE.":PRINT:GOTO 670
740 PRINT:INPUT "SECOND NUMBER: ",N
750 IF N>1 THEN 770
760 PRINT:PRINT "ENTER A NUMBER GREATER THAN 1.":GOTO 740
770 IF N<1ØØ\emptyset\emptyset THEN 790
78\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "MUST BE A NUMBER LESS THAN 1øøø0.":GOTO 740
790 IF N=INT(N) THEN 810
8ø\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "A WHOLE NUMBER PLEASE.":GOTO 74ø
81\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "GREATEST COMMON FACTOR = ";
82\emptyset IF M=N THEN G=M:GOTO 910
830 IF M<N THEN 850
840 SWAP M,N
850 FOR K=1 TO M
860 IF (M/K)<>INT(M/K) THEN 90\emptyset
870 J=M/K
880 IF (N/J)<>INT(N/J) THEN 9ø\emptyset
890 G=J:GOTO 91b
900 NEXT K:G=1
910 PRINT G
920 GOSUB 170
930 GOTO 63ø
940 CLS
950 PRINT "FIND THE LEAST COMMON MULTIPLE OF TWO OR THREE NU
MBERS."
960 PRINT
970 PRINT:PRINT "HOW MANY NUMBERS--2 OR 3? ";
980 AS=INKEYS
990 IF AS<"2" OR AS>"3" THEN 980
10ø0 A=VAL(AS):PRINT AS
1010 FOR C=1 TO A:N(C)=0
102\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "NUMBER";C;:INPUT N(C)
1030 IF N(C)>1 THEN 1050
1040 PRINT "NUMBER MUST BE GREATER THAN ONE.":GOTO 1020
1050 IF N(C)<l\emptyset00 THEN 1070
1060 PRINT "NUMBER MUST BE LESS THAN 1000.":GOTO 1020
1070 IF N(C)=INT(N(C)) THEN 1090

```
```

1080 PRINT "A WHOLE NUMBER PLEASE.":GOTO 1ø2ø
1090 NEXT C
1100 IF AS="3" THEN 1180
1110 IF N(1)<>N(2) THEN 1130
1120 L=N(1):GOTO 1320
1136 IF N(1)<N(2) THEN 1150
114\varnothing SWAP N(1),N(2)
1156 FOR C=1 TO N(1)
1160 IF C*N(2)/N(1)=INT(C*N(2)/N(1)) THEN L=C*N(2):GOTO 1326
1170 NEXT C:L=N(1)*N(2):GOTO 132\emptyset
118Ø S=\emptyset
1190 FOR C=1 TO 2
1200 IF N(C)<=N(C+1) THEN 1220
1210 SWAP N(C),N(C+1):S=1
1220 NEXT C:IF S=l THEN 118\varnothing
1230 FOR C=1 TO N(2)
1240 F=C*N(3)
1250 IF (F/N(l)=INT(F/N(1))) AND (F/N(2)=INT(F/N(2))) THEN L
=F:GOTO 132D
1260 NEXT C
1270 M=N(2)*N(3)
128b FOR C=1 TO N(1)
1290 F=C*M
130\emptyset IF F/N(l)=INT(F/N(1)) THEN L=F:GOTO 1320
1310 NEXT C:L=M*N(1)
132\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "LEAST COMMON MULTIPLE IS ";L
1330 GOSUB 170
1340 GOTO 940
1350 CLS
1360 END

```

\section*{Interaction with the Student}

Tutorial programs actually teach the student as the program is used. The main idea for tutorial programs as computer-aided instruction is that a student can work at his or her own pace. The computer introduces topics as the student is ready for them. Often, the program advances only when the student masters a certain level, and the program may offer remediation if necessary. The student has instant feedback through interaction with the computer.

The typing program and the algebra program in Chapter 14, "Sample Programs," are examples of tutorials. "Notes" in the chapter on music may also be considered a tutorial with a drill. "Locating Points" presented here is a tutorial for beginning coordinate geometry at the elementary level.

This program teaches the student how a rectangular coordinate system works. First, a random example point with a given \(x\) coordinate and \(y\) coordinate is shown on a rectangular coordinate system. The student may press \(Y\) (yes) to see another example point or \(N(n o)\) to continue the program.

If the student presses N , the screen clears and a random point is shown. The student must identify the point by first pressing the number for the x coordinate and then the number for the \(y\) coordinate. If the answer is incorrect, the correct answer is shown and the student must do another problem. If the answer is correct, the student has the option of trying another problem of the same kind or continuing the program.

The next section of this tutorial shows the grid with a point at ( 0,0 ). A random set of coordinates is chosen and printed. The student must locate the point by moving the dot on the grid. Arrow keys are used to move the dot. When the student has moved the point to the desired position, he or she presses the RETURN key. The point changes color and is checked. If the answer is incorrect, the student is shown the right location and given another problem. If the answer is correct, the student has the option of having another of the same type of problem, starting the program over, or ending the program.

The grid is printed several times, so it is placed in a subroutine in lines 50-140. The COLOR command changes the color of the printing.

Line 250 converts the \(x\) and \(y\) values chosen to ROW and COLumn variables for use in the LOCATE commands. The subroutine in lines 290-360 changes the colors of the lines to show a location first using a COLOR statement, then printing the lines. Printing from right to left for the line is done by using a FOR-NEXT loop with a negative STEP size, lines 330-340.

\section*{Outline of Locating Points Program}
\begin{tabular}{|ll|}
\hline Lines & \begin{tabular}{l} 
Explanation \\
40 \\
Branches past subroutines. \\
\(50-140\)
\end{tabular} \\
Subroutine to clear screen and draw grid. \\
\(150-190\) & Subroutine to wait for student to press RETURN. \\
\(200-260\) & Subroutine to randomly choose x and y and deter- \\
& mine the ROW and COL position. \\
\(270-360\) & Subroutine to play uh-oh for incorrect answer and \\
to draw lines showing correct position. \\
370-390 & Subroutine to play arpeggio for correct answer. \\
400 & Clears screen. \\
420 & Prints title.
\end{tabular}

\section*{Chapter \(\mathbb{1} 1\)}
\begin{tabular}{ll} 
Lines & Explanation \\
\(430-470\) & \begin{tabular}{l} 
Define strings for graphic characters used in print- \\
ing grid.
\end{tabular} \\
\(480-550\) & Print title screen with information. \\
\(560-630\) & Print first screen showing example point. \\
\(640-670\) & Present option for another example or to continue \\
& and branch. \\
\(680-760\) & Print problem and ask student for coordinates. \\
\(770-840\) & Receive student's answers. \\
\(850-900\) & If answer is incorrect, show and print correct an- \\
& swer; do another problem. \\
910-1000 & Print instructions. \\
\(1010-1020\) & Ask student to locate point. \\
\(1030-1190\) & Move point as student presses arrow keys. \\
\(1200-1205\) & When student presses RETURN, change color of \\
\(1210-1240\) & point. \\
If answer is incorrect, show correct point and do \\
1250 & another problem. \\
\(1260-1320\) & If answer is correct, plays an arpeggio. \\
\(1330-1340\) & Clear screen and end.
\end{tabular}

\section*{Program 11-5. Locating Points}
```

10 REM LOCATING POINTS
4| GOTO 4ø\emptyset
50 REM GRID
60 CLS:COLOR l:PRINT
7| FOR M=6 TO 1 STEP -1
8\emptyset PRINT TAB(5);RIGHT$(STR$(M),1);Ll\$
9ø PRINT TAB(6);Ul$:PRINT TAB(b);Ul$
160 NEXT M
ll\emptyset PRINT TAB(5);"\emptyset";Ll\$
120 PRINT TAB(6);"リ l 2 3 4 4 5 5 6 0
140 RETURN
150 LOCATE 22,2:PRINT "PRESS <RETURN>."
160 BEEP
170 E$=INKEY$
18@ IF ES<>CHRS(13) THEN 17y
190 RETURN
200 REM CHOOSE X AND Y
210 X=INT(1Ø*RND)
220 Y=INT(7*RND)
230 X$=RIGHT$(STR$(X),1)
240 Y$=RIGHT$(STR$(Y),1)
25\emptyset ROW=2Ø-3*Y:COL=6+4*X
260 RETURN
27ø REM INCORRECT
280 SOUND 250,5:SOUND 200,5
290 REM DRAW STRIPES
300 COLOR 3
310 FOR M=21-Y*3 TO 2\emptyset
32\emptyset LOCATE M,COL:PRINT U\$:NEXT M

```

\section*{Chapter \(\mathbb{1} \mathbb{1}\)}
```

330 FOR M=3+4*X TO 6 STEP -1
340 LOCATE ROW,M:PRINT L$:NEXT M
35\emptyset LOCATE ROW,COL:PRINT "+";:COLOR l
360 RETURN
370 SOUND 262,3:SOUND 330,3
380 SOUND 392,3:SOUND 523,6
390 RETURN
40Ø CLS:WIDTH 80
42\emptyset PRINT TAB(2|);"** LOCATING POINTS **"
43\emptyset C$="+":S$=" "
44| L$=C$+"---"
450 U$="|":U2$=US+" "
460 Ll$=L$:Ul$=U2\$
47\emptyset FOR M=1 TO 9:Ll$=Ll$+LS:Ul$=Ul$+U2$:NEXT M
480 PRINT:PRINT
49\emptyset PRINT " This program discusses coordinate geometry,"
500 PRINT:PRINT " or locating points using x- and y-coordi
nates."
5lis PRINT
520 PRINT " Any point can be defined on the grid by specif
ying"
530 PRINT:PRINT " an x distance and a y distance from the
origin."
540 RANDOMIZE TIMER
55も GOSUB 15も
5 6 0 ~ G O S U B ~ 6 0 ~
57\emptyset X=INT(5*RND)+1:Y=INT(4*RND) +1
580 GOSUB 230
590 GOSUB 30り
600 PRINT " (";X$;",";Y$;")"
610 COLOR 2:LOCATE 10,5|
6 2 0 ~ P R I N T ~ " A ~ p o i n t ~ h a s ~ a n ~ x - c o o r d i n a t e " ~ "
630 PRINT TAB(50);"and a y-coordinate."
640 PRINT:PRINT TAB(50);"Want another example? (Y/N)";
660 E$=INKEY$:IF ES="Y" OR E$="Y" THEN 560
67\emptyset IF ES<<"N" AND ES<<"n" THEN 66|
6 8 0 GOSUB 60
690 GOSUB 210
70% COLOR 3
71Ø LOCA'TE ROW,COL:PRINT "*"
720 COLOR 2
730 LOCATE 10,50:PRINT "What are the coordinates?"
740 PRINT:PRINT TAB(5\emptyset);"(?,?)"
750 COLOR 3
760 LOCATE 12,51:PRINT "?"
77| ES=INKEYS:IF ES<"|" OR ES>"9" THEN 77\emptyset
780 LOCATE 12,51
79| PRINT RIGHT$(ES,l);
810 LOCATE 12,53:PRINT "?"
82| FS=INKEYS:IF FS<"D" OR F$>"9" THEN 82|
830 LOCATE 12,53
840 PRINT RIGHT$(FS,1);
850 IF VAL(E$)=X AND VAL(F$)=Y THEN GOSUB 37|:GOTO 910
860 GOSUB 280
870 LOCATE 13,50:PRINT "(";XS;",";Y$;")"
880 COLOR l:LOCATE 15,50:PRINT "PRESS <RETURN>."
890 GOSUB 170
960 GOTO 680
910 COLOR 1:LOCATE 15,49
920 PRINT "PRESS I FOR SAME TYPE PROBLEM"

```

\section*{Chapter 11}
```

930 PRINT TAB(55);"2 TO CONTINUE PROGRAM"
94| E$=INKEYS:IF E$="l" THEN 68D
950 IF ES<>"2" THEN 94|
96y CLS
970 PRINT "You will be given the coordinates."
980 PRINT:PRINT "Use the arrow keys to position the point,"
99\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "then press <return>."
1000 GOSUB 150
1010 GOSUB 60:GOSUB 210
102\emptyset LOCATE 1\varnothing,50:PRINT "LOCATE (";XS;",";Y$;")"
1030 TR=20:TC=6
1040 COLOR 3:LOCATE TR,TC:PRINT "*"
1050 ES=INKEY$:IF E$="" THEN 1050
1060 IF E$=CHR$(13) THEN l20|
1690 IF ASC(E$)=30 THEN DC=4:DR=\emptyset:GOTO 1140
11\emptyset\emptyset IF ASC(E$)=28 THEN DC=\emptyset:DR=-3:GOTO 114\emptyset
1110 IF ASC(E$)=31 THEN DC=-4:DR=\emptyset:GOTO 1140
1120 IF ASC(ES)<>29 THEN 1050
1130 DC=\emptyset:DR=3
1140 COLOR l:LOCATE TR,TC:PRINT C\$
1150 TR=TR+DR:IF TR>2\emptyset THEN TR=2ע
1160 IF TR<2 THEN TR=2
1170 TC=TC+DC:IF TC>42 THEN TC=42
1180 IF TC<6 THEN TC=6
11ジ GOTO lifu
1200 COLOR 1:LOCATE TR,TC:PRINT "*"
1205 COLOR 3:LOCATE TR,TC:PRINT "*"
1210 IF TR=ROW AND TC=COL THEN 1250
1220 GOSUB 280
1230 LOCATE 15,50:PRINT "PRESS <RETURN>"
124ø GOSUB 17|:GOTO 101|
125b GOSUB 370
1260 COLOR l:LOCATE 17,49
1270 PRINT "PRESS l FOR SAME TYPE PROBLEM"
128\emptyset PRINT TAB(55);"2 START PROGRAM OVER"
129\emptyset PRINT TAB(55);"3 END PROGRAM"
130\emptyset ES=INKEY\$
1310 IF E$<"l" OR E$>"3" THEN 130b
1320 ON VAL(E\$) GOTO 1010,400,1330
1330 CLS
1340 END

```

\section*{Educational Games}

Another type of educational program is a game. The student can have fun while learning or reviewing concepts.
"Grid" is a game to practice the concept of coordinates learned in the Locating Points program. An object is hidden somewhere on the grid. The objective is to find the hidden point in as few guesses as possible. Guesses are made by specifying coordinates, first pressing the x coordinate, then the \(y\) coordinate. The point guessed is shown.

If the answer is not the position of the hidden point, there is an \(u h-o h\) sound and a hint is printed. An arrow on the point shows the direction of the hidden point.

\section*{Chapter \(\mathbb{1}\)}

The score of the number of guesses is shown in the upper right corner of the screen. After the student has successfully found the point, the option to try again is presented.

You can make a better theme by using different graph-ics-perhaps a wumpus in a hidden cave or a bomb to be detonated in a hotel or a black hole in space.

Printing the grid and the logic for printing the points are similar to the Locating Points program. To print the hint arrows, IF-THEN statements are used comparing the student's answer to the coordinates of the hidden point.

\section*{Program 11-6. Grid}
```

10 REM GRID
4| CS="+":S$=" ":DS="*"
50 L$=C$+"---"
60 U$="|":U2$=U$+" "
70 Ll$=L$:U1$=U2$
8| FOR M=1 TO 9:Ll$=Ll$+L$:Ul$=Ul$+U2$:NEXT M
90 CLS
11| PRINT:PRINT TAB(26);"** GRID **"
12も PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
l3b PRINT " Find the hidden point on the grid."
140 PRINT:PRINT
150 PRINT " Specify an x-coordinate then a y-coordinate."
160 PRINT:PRINT
170 PRINT " If the point you chose is incorrect, you will
be given a hint."
18\emptyset PRINT:PRINT
19\varnothing PRINT " Your score is shown in the upper right corner
of the screen."
210 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
220 PRINT TAB(10);"PRESS THE SPACE BAR TO BEGIN."
230 RANDOMIZE TIMER
240 AS=INKEYS:IF AS<>" " THEN 240
250 CLS:COLOR 2:PRINT
260 FOR M=6 TO l STEP -1
27\emptyset PRINT TAB(5);RIGHT$(STRS(M),1);Ll$
28Ø PRINT TAB(6);Ul$:PRINT TAB(6);Ul$
290 NEXT M
300 PRINT TAB(5);"\&";Ll\$
31| PRINT TAB(6);"も 1 2 2 3 4 4 5 5 0
320 COLOR 1
336 X=INT(10*RND)
340 Y=INT(7*RND)
350 X$=RIGHT$(STRS(X),1)
360 Y$=RIGHT$(STR$(Y),1)
370 ROW=2y-3*Y:COL=6+4*X
380 LOCATE 1,65:PRINT "SCORE"
390 SC=\emptyset
4W| SC=SC+1:IF SC>99 THEN 690
410 COLOR 1:LOCATE 2,67:PRINT SC
42y LOCATE 10,50:PRINT "(?,?)"
430 COLOR 3:LOCATE 10,51:PRINT "?"
45| E$=INKEY$:IF E$<"|" OR E\$>"9" THEN 45|
460 LOCATE 10,51

```

\section*{Chapter 11}
```

470 PRINT RIGHT$(ES,l)
490 LOCATE 10,53:PRINT "?"
5|| F$=INKEY$:IF F$<"|" OR F$>"6" THEN 5||
510 LOCATE 10,53
520 PRINT RIGHTS(FS,1)
530 E=VAL(E$):F=VAL(F$)
54ø EX=6+4*E:FY=2\emptyset-3*F:LOCATE FY,EX
55| PRINT D$
560 IF E=X AND F=Y THEN 650
570 BEEP
580 IF E=X THEN 610
590 IF E>X THEN H$=CHR$(60) ELSE H$=CHRS(62)
600 GOTO 630
610 IF F>Y THEN HS=CHR$(68) ELSE H$=CHR$(94)
630 LOCATE FY,EX:PRINT H\$
640 GOTO 40|
650 COLOR 1:LOCATE FY,EX:PRINT D\$
660 SOUND 262,3:SOUND 330,3
670 SOUND 392,3:SOUND 523,6
680 GOTO 720
690 COLOR 1:LOCATE 15,5\emptyset
7\emptyset\emptyset PRINT "SORRY, YOU LOST."
710 PRINT TAB(50);"THE POINT IS AT (";X$;",";Y$;")."
720 COLOR 1:LOCATE 18,50
730 PRINT "PLAY AGAIN'? (Y/N)"
740 A$=INKEY$:IF A$="Y" OR A$="Y" THEN 90
750 IF AS<<"N" AND AS<< "n" THEN 74D
760 CLS
770 END

```

\section*{Text Simulations}

Simulations and creativity programs probably offer the best use of a computer in education, but these programs are more difficult to write in BASIC. However, it is possible to write simple simulation games in BASIC using text instead of complicated graphics sequences.
"Flight Schedule" fits in the category of a text simulation. The student may make choices and the program continues depending on those choices. The student starts at Seattle, Washington, but is given a choice of a destination in the eastern part of the United States. This program is designed to help students learn to read and interpret flight schedules.

Three airlines are listed with some of their destination cities. The student may select one of the airlines. The flights chosen must be direct flights. The portion of the schedule for a particular airline going to the destination is shown, and the student must answer comprehensive questions about the schedule. All questions have multiple-choice answers. Most of the answers include an explanation after the student's response.

The flight schedules for this program are modified ex－ cerpts from actual airlines，although the names of the airlines have been changed．All flights are theoretically possible．

This program is mainly composed of PRINT statements with branching．You can enhance the program by adding more destination cities，giving a choice of origination cities，and allowing more connecting flights．

The PRINT statements to display the schedules are in subroutines because they are printed several times．The sub－ routines use line labels rather than line numbers．Numbers are used，however，on some of the other lines that need referenc－ ing．\(E \$\) is always used for the student＇s answer，and INKEY\＄is used rather than INPUT to prevent scrolling of the schedule．

\section*{Program 11－7．Flight Schedule}
\(1 \varnothing\) REM FLIGHT SCHEDULE
20 CLS：PRINT
PRINT TAB（20）；＂＊＊FLIGHT SCHEDULE＊＊＂
PRINT：PRINT：PRINT
PRINT＂Your object is to fly from the west coast to the＂ PRINT：PRINT＂east coast area．Plan the trip．＂ Dl\＄（1）＝＂New York City＂ Dl\＄（2）＝＂Greensboro，N．C．＂
PRINT：PRINT：PRINT PRINT＂Your originating city is SEATTLE，WASHINGTON．＂ PRINT：PRINT：GOSUB PRESSKEY

3ヵ CLS：PRINT：PRINT
PRINT＂You will leave from the Seattle／Tacoma Airport．＂ PRINT：PRINT＂What is your destination？＂：PRINT PRINT＂ 1 ＂；Dl\＄（l） PRINT＂ 2 ＂；Dl\＄（2） SOUND 13』0，2

ES＝INKEYS：IF ES＜＂1＂OR ES＞＂2＂THEN 40
DD＝VAL（ES）
PRINT：PRINT
PRINT＂Your destination city is＂；Dl\＄（DD）：PRINT：PRINT GOSUB PRESSKEY

5才 GOSUB AIRLINES
IF AL＜＞2 THEN 7y
PRINT：PRINT＂Sorry，Beeline does not have direct flights
＂
60 PRINT＂to＂；D1\＄（DD）
GOSUB PRESSKEY：GOTO 5も
70 IF DD＝2 AND AL＝3 THEN GOTO UNIVERSAL．G
IF AL＝1 AND DD＝1 THEN GOTO AIRWEST．NY
IF AL＝3 AND DD＝1 THEN GOTO UNIVEKSAL．NY
PRINT：PRINT＂Sorry，Airwest does not have direct flights
＂：GOTO 60
REM Seattle to New York，Airwest
AIRWEST．NY：
GOSUB AAl

\section*{Chapter \(\mathbb{1} 1\)}

PRINT＂What time do you want to leave？＂：PRINT
PRINT＂1 7：00 a．m．＂：PRINT＂2 3：15 p．m．＂ ES＝INKEYS：IF ES＜＞＂1＂AND ES＜＜＂2＂THEN 8 \(E=\operatorname{VAL}(E \$)\)
GOSUB AA2
PRINT＂If you leave at＂；LS（E）＂，＂
PRINT＂what time will you arrive at New York？＂
PRINT＂1 7： 10 a．m．＂：PRINT＂2 4：35 p．m．＂
PRINT＂3 3：3y \(\mu . \mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{m}}\)＂：PRINT＂4 12：35 a．m．＂
PRINT＂5 7：øض p．m．＂
ES＝INKEYS：IF E\＄＜＂I＂OR ES＞＂5＂THEN 9才
IF \(\mathrm{E}=1\) AND \(\mathrm{E} \$=" 2\)＂THEN PRINT：PRINT＂YES．＂：GOTO 100
IF E＝2 AND E\＄＝＂4＂THEN PRINT：PRINT＂YES．＂：GOTO 10y
PRINT：PRINT＂NO．＂
1øø GOSUB ARRIVE
GOSUB AA2
PRINT＂Is your＂；LS（E）；＂flight nonstop？Y／N＂
\(11 \varnothing\) ES＝INKEYS：IF ES＝＂Y＂OR ES＝＂Y＂THEN \(12 \emptyset\)
IF ES＜＜＂N＂AND ES＜＞＂n＂THEN 11才 ELSE PRINT＂CORRECT．＂
120 PRINT：PRINT＂The STOPS column indicates there is one sto
PRINT＂Where is it？＂：PRINT
PRINT＂1 Houston＂：PRINT＂2 Greensbofo＂：PRINT＂3 Denve
r"

PRINT＂4 Salt Lake City＂：PRINT＂5 Chicago＂：PRINT
130 ES＝INKEY\＄：IF ES＜＂l＂OR E\＄＞＂5＂THEN 130
IF ES＝＂4＂THEN PRINT＂CORRECT．＂
PRINT＂SLC stands for Salt Lake City．＂
GOSUB PRESSKEY：GOSUB AA2
PRINT＂Meal symbols：＂
PRINT＂B－Breakfast L－Lunch D－Dinner S－Snack＂
PRINT＂M－More than one meal appropriate to time．＂
PRINT：PRINT＂Do you get a meal on your＂；L\＄（E）；＂flight？
PRINT＂ 1 Yes，breakfast＂：PRINT＂ 2 Yes，lunch＂
PRINT＂ 3 Yes，dinner＂：PRINT＂ 4 Yes，more than one＂
PRINT＂ 5 No＂：PRINT
140 ES＝INKEYS：IF ES＜＂l＂OR ES＞＂5＂THEN 14も
IF E＝1 THEN 150
IF \(E \$=" 3\)＂THEN 160
PRINT＂The MEAL column indicates＇\(D\)＇meaning dinner．＂：GO TO 176
150 IF ES＝＂4＂THEN 160
PRINT＂The MEAL column indicates＇\(M\)＇meaning more than 0 ne meal．＂

GOTO 17ø
\(16 \varnothing\) PRINT＂CORRECT．＂：PRINT
17\％GOSUB PRESSKEY：GOSUB AA2
PRINT＂You chose to leave at＂；LS（E）；＂．＂
PRINT＂What is the flight number of your first flight？＂
PRINT＂A 353＂：PRINT＂B 566＂
PRINT＂C 720＂：PRINT＂D 7øø＂
PRINT＂E 435＂：PRINT
\(18 \emptyset E S=I N K E Y \$: I F E S<" A " O R(E S>" E "\) AND \(E \$<" a ")\) OR ES＞＂e＂THE N 180

IF E＝1 AND（ES＝＂A＂OR E\＄＝＂a＂）THEN PRINT＂Correct；Fligh
t No．353＂：GOTO 190
IF E＝2 AND（ES＝＂C＂OR ES＝＂C＂）THEN PRINT＂Correct；Fligh t No．720＂：GOTO \(19 \varnothing\)

PRINT＂The first number in the FLIGHT column is the flig ht＂

PRINT "number for the.first part of the trip."
GOSUB PRESSKEY:GOTO PLANE
REM Seattle-Greensboro, Universal
UNIVERSAL.G:
GOSUB UAI
PRINT "What time do you want to leave?":PRINT
FOR T=1 TO 4:PRINT T; SPC(3):LS(T):NEXT T
200 ES=INKEYS:IF ES<"1" OR ES>"4" THEN 2øも
\(E=\operatorname{VAL}(E S): G O S U B\) UA2
PRINT "If you leave at "; LS(E);", what time will you arr ive"

PRINT "at Greensboro?": PRINT
PRINT "A 6:35 p.m.":PRINT "B 16:36 p.m.":PRINT "C 9
:51 a.m."
PRINT "D 10:35 a.m.":PRINT "E 1:40 p.m.":PRINT
210 ES=INKEYS:IF ES<"A" OR (ES>"E" AND ES<"a") OR E\$>"e" THE N 210

IF E=1 AND (ES="A" OR ES="a") THEN PRINT "YES."
IF \(E=2\) AND ( \(E \$=" B "\) OR ES="b") THEN PRINT "YES."
IF E=3 AND ( \(E \$=" B "\) OR \(E \$=" b ")\) THEN PRINT "YES."
IF \(E=4\) AND ( \(E S=" C "\) OR ES="c") THEN PRINT "YES."
GOSUB ARRIVE:GOSUB UA2
PRINT "If you wanted to arrive at Greensboro and wait th
e"
PRINT "minimum time for a noon meeting, which would be \(t\) he best?"

PRINT "Leave at:"
FOR T=1 TO 4:PRINT T; SPC(3); LS(T):NEXT T
220 E\$=INKEY\$:IF E\$<"I" OR E\$>"4" THEN 220
IF ES="4" THEN PRINT:PRINT "YES."
PRINT:PRINT "The 12:20 a.m. flight arrives before noon."
GOSUB PRESSKEY:GOSUB UA2
PRINT "The VIA column indicates you have a connecting fl
ight."
PRINT "Where do you stop?"
PRINT " 1 Las Vegas":PRINT " 2 Salt Lake City"
PRINT " 3 Denver":PRINT " 4 Chicago"
PRINT " 5 Cincinnati":PRINT " 6 Houston"
230 ES=INKEYS:IF ES<"1" OR ES>"6" THEN 230
IF ES="4" THEN PRINT:PRINT "CORRECT."
PRINT:PRINT "CHI stands for Chicago."
GOSUB PRESSKEY:GOSUB UA2
PRINT "You chose the ";LS(E);" flight."
PRINT "What is the beginning flight number?"
PRINT "A 140":PRINT "B 144":PRINT "C 150"
PRINT " D 902":PRINT "E 745":PRINT "F 408"
240 ES=INKEYS:IF ES<"A" OR (ES>"F" AND ES<"a") OR ES>"f" THE N 240

IF E=ASC(ES)-64 OR E=ASC(ES)-96 THEN PRINT:PRINT "CORREC
T."

PRINT: PRINT "The first number in the FLIGHT column is ": FS(E)"."

GOSUB PRESSKEY:GOSUB UA2
PRINT "Two of the flights actually combine in Chicago."
PRINT "What is their final flight number?"
PRINT "A 884":PRINT " B 144":PRINT " C 492"
PRINT " D 150":PRINT " E 217":PRINT "F 951"
250 ES=INKEY\$:IF ES<"A" OR (ES>"F" AND ES<"a") OR ES>"f" THE N 250

IF \(E S=" C\) " OR ES="c" THEN PRINT:PRINT "CORRECT."

\section*{Chapter 111}
```

    PRINT:PRINT "Flights 144 and l50 both join Flight 492."
    GOSUB PRESSKEY:GOSUB UA2
    GOSUB SERVICE
    GOTO PLANE
    UNIVERSAL.NY:
GOSUB UA3
PRINT "What time do you want to leave?":PRINT
FOR T=1 TO 5:PRINT T;SPC(3);L$(T):NEXT T
260 E$=INKEY$:IF E$<"l" OR E$>"5" THEN 260
    E=VAL(E$)
GOSUB UA4
PRINT "If you leave at ";L$(E);", what time will you arr
ive in New York?"
    FOR T=1 TO 5:PRINT CHRS(64+T);SPC(3);AS(T):NEXT T
27\emptyset ES=INKEY$:IF ES<"A" OR (ES>"E" AND E$<"a") OR ES>"e" THE
N 270
    IF E=ASC(ES)-64 OR E=ASC(ES)-96 THEN PRINT:PRINT "CORREC
T."
    PRINT:PRINT "The second column has the corresponding arr
ival time."
    PRINT "It is ";AS(E)
    GOSUB PRESSKEY:GOSUB UA4
    PRINT "You chose the ";LS(E);" flight."
    PRINT "Where will you land?":PRINT
    PRINT " l Newark Airport"
    PRINT " 2 Kennedy Airport":PRINT
28| E$=INKEY$:IF E$<"l" OR ES>"2" THEN 28|
IF (E=3 OR E=5) AND E$="2" THEN PRINT "Yes, ";:GOTO 29|
    IF ES="2" THEN PRINT "NO, ";:GOTO 29凶
    IF E=3 OR E=5 THEN PRINT "NO, ";:GOTO 290
    PRINT "Yes, ";
29| PRINT "E indicates Newark and J indicates Kennedy."
    GOSUB PRESSKEY:GOSUB UA4
    PRINT "You chose the ";L$(E);" flight."
PRINT "What is your beginning flight number?"
FOR T=1 TO 5:PRINT CHRS(64+T);" ";FL(T):NEXT T
300 ES=INKEYS:IF ES<"A" OR (ES>"E" AND ES<"a") OR E$>"e" THE
N 300
    IF E=ASC(E$)-64 OR E=ASC(ES)-96 THEN PRINT:PRINT "CORREC
T."
PRINT "Your flight number is";FL(E);"."
GOSUB PRESSKEY:GOSUB UA4
PRINT:PRINT "If you wanted a non-stop flight and wanted
to"
RANDOMIZE TIMER:A=INT(2*RND+1)
W$(1)="before":W$(2)="after"
PRINT "leave ";WS(A);" noon, what would be your flight n
umber?"
FOR T=1 TO 5:PRINT CHRS(64+T);" ";FL(T):NEXT 'T
31| E$=INKEY$:IF ES<"A" OR (ES>"E" AND E$<"a") OR ES>"e" THE
N 310
    IF A=1 AND (ES="C" OR E$="c") THEN PRINT:PRINT "CORRECT.
IF A=2 AND (E\$="E" OR ES="e") THEN PRINT'PRIN'P "CORRECT.
"
PRINT:PRINT "Ø indicates no stops. Flight 4| leaves bef
ore"
PRINT "noon, and Flight 18 after."
GOSUB PRESSKEY:GOSUB UA4

```

\section*{Chapter 11}

PRINT:PRINT "If you want to meet a friend at the staplet
on"
PRINT "International Airport in Denver, what time do you leave Seattle?"

FOR T=1 TO 5:PRINT CHRS (64+T);" ";L\$(T):NEXT T
320 ES=INKEYS:IF ES<"A" OR (ES>"E" AND ES<"a") OR ES>"e" THE N 320

IF ES="A" OR ES="a" THEN PRINT:PRINT "CORRECT."
PRINT:PRINT "The last column indicates the first flight stops in Denver."

GOSUB PRESSKEY: GOSUB UA4
PRINT "You chose the ";L\$(E);" flight."
PRINT "Does it make any stops?"
PRINT:PRINT "1 Yes, one in Denver."
PRINT "2 Yes, one in Chicago."
PRINT "3 Yes, in Denver and in Chicago."
PRINT "4 Yes, in Salt Lake City."
PRINT " 5 NO, it is non-stop.":PRINT
330 ES=INKEYS:IF ES<"1" OR ES>"5" THEN 330
IF E=1 AND E \(\$=" 1\) " THEN PRINT "CORRECT.":GOTO 34ゅ
IF E=1 THEN PRINT "NO.":GOTO 340
IF E=3 AND ES="5" THEN PRINT "CORRECT.":GOTO 340
IF E=5 AND ES="5" THEN PRINT "CORRECT.":GOTO 340
IF E=3 OK E=5 THEN PRINT "NO.":GOTO 34D

PRINT "NO."
340 PRINT "The last column indicates \(\delta\) for nonstop,"
PRINT "or a city abbreviation for a stop."
GOSUB PRESSKEY:GOSUB UA4
GOSUB SERVICE
GOTO PLANE
STOP

\section*{PRESSKEY:}

PRINT:PRINT "Press <RETURN>";
2 RES=INKEYS:IF RES="" THEN GOTO 2
IF RE\$ \(<>\) CHRS ( 13 ) THEN 2
RETURN

\section*{AIRLINES:}

CLS:PRINT "Seattle/Tacoma"
PRINT:PRINT "** AIRWEST AIRLINES **";TAB(45);"** BEELINE **"

PRINT " 'ro Chicago"; TAB (48);"To Honolulu"
PRINT " TO Dallas/Ft. Worth";TAB(48);"To Las Vegas, Ne
PRINT " To Denver":PRINT " To Houston"
PRINT " To Las Vegas, Nev.":PRINT " To New York"
PRINT " To Washington, D.C."
PRINT:PRINT "** UNIVERSAL AIRWAYS **"
PRINT " To Chicago":PRINT " To Dallas/Ft. Worth"
PRINT " TO Greensboro/High Point/Winston-Salem"
PRINT " To Miami, Fl.":PRINT " To New York/Newark"
PRINT " To Toronto, Ont."
PRINT: PRINT "CHOOSE AN AIRLINES: A, B, OR U";
3 ES=INKEYS:IF ES="" THEN 3
IF ES<>"A" AND ES<>"a" AND ES<<>"B" AND ES<>"b" AND ES<>"
U" AND ES<>"u" THEN 3
IF \(E S=" A\) " OR LS \(\mathrm{L}=\) "a" THEN \(A L=1\)
IF \(E S=" B\) " OR \(E \$=" b\) " THEN \(A L=2\)
IF ES="U" OR ES="u" THEN AL=3
CLS: RETURN

\section*{Chapter 11}
```

ARRIVE:
PRINT:PRINT "The first column is when you leave."
PRINT "The second column is when you'arrive."
PRINT "You will arrive at ";AS(E)
GOSUB PRESSKEY
RETURN

```
```

SERVICE:
PRINT "SERVICE: X Meal";TAB(3|);"S Snacks";TAB(5|);"% C
ocktails"
PRINT TAB(ll);"@ Movie";TAB(36);"a Audio";TAB(5v);"\& Sho
rt subject"
IF Q=2 THEN 6
PRINT:PRINT "Will you get a meal on your flight?"
PRINT " Y--Yes N--NO"
ES=INKEY$:IF E$="Y" OR E$="Y" THEN PRINT:PRINT "CORRECT.
":GOTO 5
    IF ES<<"N" AND ES<<>"n" THEN 4
5 PRINT:PRINT "The X symbol indicates a meal.":GOSUB PRESS
KEY
6 ~ R E T U R N
AAl:
    L$(1)="7:ø\emptyset a.m.":L$(2)="3:15 p.m."
    AS(1)="4:35 p.m.":A$(2)="12:35 a.m."
AA2:
CLS:PRINT "** AIRWEST AIRLINES **":PRINT
PRINT "LEAVE ARRIVE FLIGHT STOPS CNCT
MEAL"
PRINT "Seattle/Tacoma to New York K-Kennedy":PRINT
PRINT "7:øøа 4:35p K 353/566 l SLC
M"
PRINT "3:15p 12:35a K 720/700 1 SLC
D"
RRINT:PRINT:PRINT
RETURN
UAl:
L$(1)="7:45 a.m.":LS(2)="l0:35 a.m.":L$(3)="l:l| p.m.":L
$(4)="12:2ø a.m."
    AS(1)="6:35 p.in.":AS(2)="10:36 p.m.":AS(3)=AS(2):AS(4)="
9:51 a.m."
    FS(1)="140":FS(2)="144":FS(3)="156":FS(4)=" 902"
    F2$(1)="884":F2$(2)="782":F2S(3)="492":F2$(4)="644"
UA2:
CLS:PRINT "** UNIVERSAL AIRLINES **":PRINT
PRINT " LEAVE ARRIVE FLIGHT SERVICE VIA
"
PRINT "Seattle/Tacoma"
PRINT " TO Greensboro/High Point/Winston-Salem":PRINT
PRINT " 7:45a 6:35p 140/884 O \& % X Chi
PRINT "10:35a 10:36p 144/492 O @% X Chi
PRINT " l:l0p 10:36p 150/492 * @ % X Chi
PRINT "l2:20a 9:5la 902/217 \# @ % X Chi
PRINT:PRINT
RETURN

```
```

UA3 :
LS(1)="7:ø|a.m.":L$(2)="7:45 a.m.":L$(3)="8:05 a.m."
L$(4)="10:35 a.m.":L$(5)="l:0\emptyset p.m.":AS(1)="4:52 p.m."
AS(2)="5:20 p.m.":AS(3)="4:0\emptyset p.m.":AS(4)="8:12 p.m."
AS(5)="8:55 p.m.":FL(1)=752:FL(2)=140:FL(3)=40
FL(4)=144:FL(5)=18
UA4 :
CLS:PRINT "** UNIVERSAL AIRLINES **":PRINT
PRINT " LEAVE ARRIVE FLIGHT SERVICE V
IA"
PRINT "Seattle/Tacoma"
PRINT " TO New York, N.Y, E=Newark J=Kennedy"
PRINT " 7:00a 4:52p(E) 752/694 O @ % X D
en"
PRINT " 7:45a 5:2\emptysetp(E)
PRINT " 8:05a 4:ø\emptysetp(J)
4:øøp(J)
PRINT "10:35a 8:12p(E) 144/104
PRINT " 1:00p 8:55p(J) 18 0 @ % X
0
PRINT
RETURN
PLANE: CLS
PRINT "HAVE A NICE FLIGHT!"
RESTORE PICTURE
PICTURE:
DATA 212,88,480,136,6
DATA 528,160,528,164,528,166
DATA 484,164,416,152,260,126
DATA 396,118,42v,66,2
DATA 408,63,346,109
DATA 356,142,156,174,2
DATA 136,176,296,131
DATA 196,107,156,88,7
DATA 156,85,246,106,228,96
DATA 156,57,128,53,112,52,164,86
DATA 164,61,170,40,2
DATA 160,36,128,53
DATA 134,68,80,74,3
DATA 64,74,56,72,120,56
DATA 316,98,310,100,5
DATA 310,103,318,102,316,98
DATA 252,88,250,94
DATA 256,121,260,122,12
DATA 260,126,250,127,250,126
DATA 252,123,256,121,224,112
DATA 188,106,188,110,186,112
DATA 180,112,220,123,254,127
FOR J=1 TO 8
READ X1,Y1,X2,Y2,N
LINE (X1,Y1)-(X2,Y2)
FOR T=1 TO N
READ X,Y:LINE - (X,Y)
NEXT T
NEXT J
LOCATE 22,1

Chapter 18
Miscellaneous technigues

## Miscellaneous Techniques

## Sorting

One of the functions of a computer is to organize data, and there are many sort routines which take your raw data and arrange it in ascending or descending order. For example, you may want to sort a list of people by birth date, or you may want to alphabetize a list of names. Here are four BASIC algorithms for sorting (Programs 12-1 through 12-4).

In these examples, 50 random numbers are printed, sorted in ascending order, and then printed. The array A is DIMensioned in line 20 for the 50 numbers. WIDTH 77 is used to print the numbers on the screen. Line 30 uses RANDOMIZE TIMER to randomize the numbers, and line 40 chooses and prints the 50 random numbers.

SWAP is used to switch numbers. SWAP $a, b$ will put the value of number $a$ into $b$, and the value that was in $b$ will become $a$.

These algorithms sort in ascending order. If you need descending order, change the less-than ( $<$ ) signs to greaterthan ( $>$ ) signs. If you need to use strings rather than numbers, put dollar signs on all the variable names that contain items to be sorted-use $A \$$ instead of $A$.

## Bubble Sort

The bubble sort, or simple interchange sort, is commonly used because it is easy to understand. The program compares each number to the next number and exchanges numbers where necessary. If even one switch has been made during a pass through all the numbers, the loop of comparisons starts over. The number of passes through the loop depends on how many items were out of order. This sort is better for lists that are not much out of order or that haven't very many items. It can be quite slow for long lists of very mixed up items.

## Program 12-1. The Bubble Sort

```
10 REM BUBBLE SORT
20 DIM A(50):WIDTH }7
30 RANDOMIZE TIMER
4| FOR I=1 TO 5|:A(I)=INT(l|&*RND):PRINT A(I);:NEXT I:PRINT:
PRINT
50 L=49
6% S=0:FOR I=1 TO L:IF A(I)<=A(I+1) THEN 80
70 SWAP A(I),A(I+1):S=1:L=I
8| NEXT I
90 IF S=1 THEN 60
l|y FOR I=1 TO 5|:PRINT A(I);:NEXT I
110 END
```


## Shell Sort

The shell sort is considerably faster than the bubble sort because the number of comparisons that need to be made is reduced. In an array of $N$ numbers, first determine B so that 2 to the B power is less than $N$, and $N$ is less than 2 to the $\mathrm{B}+1$ power. Then initialize B as 2 to the B-1 power. The loop varies counter I from 1 to $N-B$. First, check if $\mathrm{A}(\mathrm{I})$ is less than or equal to $A(I+B)$. If so, increment $I$ and continue comparisons. If not, exchange $A(I)$ and $A(I+B)$ and change the subscript. When I reaches the value of $N$, reduce B by a factor of 2 and start the loop again. When B equals 0 , the sort is complete.

## Program 12-2. The Shell Sort

```
10 REM SHELL SOR'T
2b DIM A(5も):WIDTH }7
3v RANDOMIZE TIMER
4| FOR I=1 TU 5|:A(I)=INT(L|\mp@subsup{|}{}{*}RND):PRINT A(I);:NEX'I I:PRINT:
PRINT
5| B=1
60 B=2*B:IF B<=5\ THEN 6\emptyset
70 B=INT(B/2):IF B=\emptyset THEN 12む
80 FOR I=1 TO 50-B:C=I
90 D=C+B:IF A(C)<=A(D) THEN 11\emptyset
100 SWAP A(C),A(D):C=C-B:IF C>0 THEN 9%
110 NEXT I:GOTO 7V
12| FOR I=1 TO 5|:PRINT A(I);:NEXT
136 END
```


## Maximum and Minimum Sort

The maximum and minimum sort passes through all the numbers and puts the smallest number at one end and the largest number at the other end. Each pass finds the next smallest and next largest numbers and puts them toward the appro-
priate ends. The numbers are filled in from the ends toward the center in the array of sorted numbers.

## Program 12-3. Maximum and Minimum Sort

```
10 REM MAXIMUM AND MINIMUM SORT
20 DIM A(50):WIDTH }7
3\emptyset RANDOMILE TIMER
40 FOR I=1 TO 5|:A(I)=INT(l|D*RND):PRINT A(I);:NEXT I:PRINT:
PRINT
5| N=50:S=1
60 L=A(S):J=S:U=L:K=S
7| FOR I=S TO N
80 IF A(I)>U THEN U=A(I):K=I
90 IF A(I)<L THEN L=A(I):J=I
160 NEXT I
11% IF J=N THEN J=K
12y SWAP A(N),A(K):N=N-1
13| SWAP A(S),A(J):S=S+1
140 IF N>S THEN 6Ш
150 FOR I=1 TO 5#:PRINT A(I);:NEXT
160 END
```


## Quick Sort

The quick sort has become popular because it is one of the fastest sorting procedures in BASIC. I have translated it for Amiga BASIC here.

## Program 12-4. Quick Sort

```
10 REM QUICK SORT
20 DIM A(50):WIDTH }7
3& RANDOMIZE TIMER
40 FOR I=1 TO 50:A(I)=INT(lØも*RND):PRINT A(I);:NEXT I:PRINT:
PRINT
50 N=5|:S(1)=1:S(2)=N:T=1
60 IF T=\ THEN 180
7\emptyset T=T-1:I=2*T:L=S(I+1):M=S(I+2):X=A(L):J=L:K=M+1
80 K=K-1:IF K=J THEN 140
90 IF X<=A(K) THEN 8\emptyset
100 A(J)=A(K)
11\emptyset J=J+1:IF K=J THEN 140
120 IF X>=A(J) THEN 11|
136 A(K)=A(J):GOTO 8仑
14@ A(J)=X:IF M-J<2 THEN 16|
15y I=2*T:S(I+l)=J+1:S(I+2)=M:T=T+1
160 IF K-L<2 THEN 60
170 I=2*T:S(I+1)=L:S(I+2)=K-1:T=T+1:GOTO 60
180 FOR I=1 TO N:PRINT A(I);:NEXT I
19| END
```


## Dealing Cards

How do you choose random items without repetition? One way is to have all the items in an array and set a flag when an element is chosen. For example, in the "States and Capitals" program in Chapter 14, the $\mathrm{S} \$$ array contains the names of the states. When a state has been named correctly, the particular S\$ element is set to the null string, " ", so that it won't be chosen again.

This next sample program, Program 12-5, illustrates how you can simulate dealing cards from a deck without replacing cards. I've just printed the number or name of the card with its suit, but in an actual game you would use graphics.

Line 20 DIMensions an array $\mathrm{C}(13,4)$ to hold cards for the 13 possible numbers ( 1 through 10 plus jack, queen, and king) and the four possible suits. Lines $30-40$ define $S \$$ strings for the names of the four suits. Line 50 clears the screen and then starts the loop for dealing five cards.

Line 60 uses RANDOMIZE TIMER to make sure different numbers are chosen each time the program is run. Line 70 chooses a random NUMBER from 1 through 13. Line 80 chooses a random SUIT from 1 through 4. Line 90 makes sure the card hasn't been chosen previously. Originally, all the C elements will be 0 . Line 150 sets the card chosen to 1 so that it cannot be chosen again. For example, if NUMBER is 5 and SUIT is $3, C(5,3)$ is the card chosen. Lines $100-140$ print the card, and line 160 goes to the next card.

Lines 170-200 print the options. The first option will deal five more cards from the same deck; that is, cards are not replaced. Option 2 replaces the five cards and deals from a whole new deck.

Lines 240-250 keep track of how many cards have been dealt if cards are not replaced. After 50 cards, a new deck is needed. Lines 280-320 reset the C array so that all values are zero and all cards may then be chosen.

## Program 12-5. Dealing Cards

```
10 REM CARDS
26 DIM C(13,4)
30 S$(1)="HEART":S$(2)="CLUB"
40 S$(3)="DIAMOND":S$(4)="SPADE"
50 CLS:FOR DEAL=1 TO 5
60 RANDOMIZE TIMER
70 NUMBER=INT(13*RND) +1
8\emptyset SUIT=INT(4*RND)+1
```

```
9ø IF C(NUMBER,SUIT)=1 THEN 70
1#も PRINT
11Ø IF NUMBER=11 THEN PRINT "JACK";:GOTO 14ఏ
12\emptyset IF NUMBER=12 THEN PRINT "QUEEN";:GOTO l4|
130 IF NUMBER=13 THEN PRINT "KING"; ELSE PRINT NUMBER;
140 PRINT TAB(l|);S$(SUIT)
15b C(NUMBER,SUIT)=1
160 NEXT DEAL
17| PRINT:PRINT
180 PRINT "PRESS 1 DEAL FIVE MORE"
19| PRINT " 2 DEAL FROM FULL DECK"
2Ø\emptyset PRINT " 3 END PROGRAM"
210 K$=INKEY$
22も IF K$く"l" OR K$>"3" THEN 2l|
23| ON VAL(K$) GOTO 24y,280,340
246 T=T+1
25| IF T<10 THEN 50
260 PRINT:PRINT "OUT OF CARDS; S'TARTING OVER"
276 FOR DELAY=1 TO 2凶0|:NEXT DELAY
280 FOR J=1 TO 13
29| FOR K=1 TO 4
300 C(J,K)=\varnothing
310 NEXT K
320 NEXT J
330 GOTO 50
340 END
```


## Using a Timing Device

You may wish to use a timing device in a program to time how long it takes to respond to a question or to perform an act for a certain amount of time in a game．TIMER is similar to a clock and can return a number that can be used as a number of seconds．For example，go to the Output screen and type PRINT TIMER and press RETURN．A number is printed，such as 43525．Wait a few seconds and PRINT TIMER again．This time the number might be 43537．The difference between the two numbers is the amount of time that elapsed between the two commands．In this case，the difference is $43537-43525$ $=12$ ．This number is in seconds．

Here is a short program（Program 12－6）that illustrates the use of TIMER．The program will time how long it takes you to type in a message．Line 50 will BEEP to signal the start of the timing．Line 60 sets the variable T1 to TIMER．Line 70 is IN－ PUT to receive your typing．When you press RETURN，line 80 sets the variable T 2 to the new value of TIMER．Line 100 prints the length of time，which is the difference between T2 and T1．

## Program 12-6. Timing

10 REM TIMING
$2 \emptyset$ PRINT "TYPE IN A MESSAGE THEN PRESS <RETURN>."
3i PRINT "START AT THE TONE."
40 FOR DELAY=1 TO 2UØD:NEXT DELAY
56 BEEP
$60 \mathrm{Tl}=\mathrm{TIMER}$
76 INPUT MSGS
8 T T2=TIMER
90 PRINT:PRINT
$1 \varnothing \varnothing$ PRINT "THE TIME WAS";T2-T1;"SECONDS."
110 END

## Arrow Keys

There are several ways you can use the arrow keys in a program. One way is to use INKEY\$ to scan the keyboard and see if a key is pressed. The ASCII codes of the arrow keys are
$31 \leftarrow \underset{29}{28} \rightarrow 30$
You can use IF-THEN statements to test the ASCII value of the keys to see which direction is pressed. "Stepping," Program 10-2, in Chapter 10 uses the arrow keys to receive the answers.

The following program illustrates a use of the arrow keys. "Doodler" is a drawing program. A point starts at the middle of the screen with $x$ and $y$ coordinates 310 and 90. PSET draws the point on the screen (line 30). Line 40 initializes the color C.

Line 50 uses $K \$=$ INKEY $\$$ to see if a key is pressed. Lines $60-80$ check whether the key pressed is the space bar, and if so, the color number is changed. The color may be from 0 through 4.

Lines 90-120 check to see whether the arrow keys have been pressed. If an arrow key is pressed, the appropriate x or y coordinate is changed. Lines $130-160$ check the border conditions for the point. If it is at an edge, the point will "wrap" to the opposite edge. Line 170 uses PSET to draw the new point. Line 180 returns to line 50 for the next keypress.

## Program 12-7. Doodler

```
10 REM DOODLE
12 CLS
14 PRINT "** DOUDLE **"
```

```
16 PRINT:PRINT "Use the arrow keys to move."
18 PRINT:PRINT "Press the space bar to change colors."
20 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
22 PRINT "PRESS <RETURN> TO START DRAWING."
24 ES=INKEYS
26 IF ES<>CHRS(13) THEN 24
28 CLS
30 X=310:Y=90:PSET (X,Y)
40 C=b
5| K$=INKEY$:IF K$̧="" THEN 5|
60 IF K$<>" " THEN 90
70 C=C+l:IF C>3 THEN C=\emptyset
80 COLOR C:GOTO 17凶
90 IF ASC(K$)=31 THEN X=X-1:GOTO 13凶
1\emptyset\emptyset IF ASC(K$)=30 THEN X=X+1:GOTO 130
110 IF ASC(K$)=28 THEN Y=Y-1:GOTO 130
120 IF ASC(K$)=29 THEN Y=Y+l ELSE 5\emptyset
130 IF X<\emptyset THEN X=615
140 IF X>615 THEN X=\varnothing
150 IF Y<\emptyset THEN Y=185
160 IF Y>185 THEN Y=\emptyset
17| PSET (X,Y)
180 GOTO 50
19| END
```


## Spelling Practice

School children all over the nation seem to have weekly spelling tests. Drill, practice, repetition-another use for a computer. Program 12-8, "Spelling Flash Cards," is designed to computerize spelling flash cards.

It is designed for up to 30 words, but if you have more, change the DIM statement in line 20 and the limit in line 150.

Put your own spelling words in the DATA statements in lines $630-680$, making sure that the words are separated by commas. After the last spelling word, put a comma and the @ symbol (typed with SHIFT-2). Save the program, then you can use it all week.

The program presents the words in a random order. A word is printed on the screen momentarily, then erased. The student must type the word and press RETURN. To see the word again, press the space bar. If the word is missed twice, the word is shown and will then appear again later in the quiz. The quiz continues until all the words have been spelled correctly. Asterisks at the bottom of the screen indicate correctly spelled words.

If you want to have the word flashed on the screen a different length of time, change the limit in line 300 . You may want to add speech to have the computer say the word rather
than flash it on the screen. Speech does take time to experiment on the pronunciations.

Outline of Spelling Flash Cards Program

| Lines | Explanation |
| :---: | :---: |
| 20 | DIMensions W\$ for 30 words. |
| 30-120 | Print title and instructio |
| 130-150 | READ in spelling words from DATA. The last data item must be @. |
| 160 | Initializes the number of words, N , and column, C , for printing the asterisks for correct words. |
| 190 | Waits for student to press the space bar to start. |
| 230 | Clears screen. |
| 240 | Performs quiz for N number of words. |
| 250 | Initializes T for times word is missed. |
| 260 | Randomly chooses a word that has not previously been spelled correctly. |
| 270 | Clears previous printing. |
| 280-310 | Print word, delay, then clear word. |
| 320-410 | Receive student's spelling. |
| 420-510 | If word is incorrect, go back for another try; if word is missed twice, print word, then wait for student to press RETURN. |
| 520-570 | If word is correct, print an asterisk, play an arpeggio, set $\mathrm{W} \$$ to " " so that it cannot be chosen again, and go to next word. |
| 580-620 | Clear screen; play tune of random notes. |
| 630-680 | DATA containing spelling words. |
| 690 | Ends. |

## Program 12-8. Spelling Flash Cards

```
10 REM SPELLING PRACTICE
20 DIM W$(3\emptyset)
30 CLS
40 PRINT TAB(18);"**********************"
50 PRINT TAB(18);"* SPELLING PRACTICE *"
60 PRINT TAB(18);
70 PRINT:PRINT
8\emptyset PRINT "You will see a spelling word flash on the screen."
9| PRINT
lø\emptyset PRINT "When it disappears you type the word then press <
RETURN>."
11Ø PRINT
12ø PRINT "If you need to see the word again, press the spac
e bar."
130 T=l:RESTORE
140 READ W$(T):IF W$(T)="@" THEN 160
```


## Chapter $\mathbb{1}$ Z

```
150 T=T+l:IF T<31 THEN 140
160 N=T-1:C=0
17\emptyset PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
180 PRINT "PRESS THE SPACE BAR TO START."
190 S$=INKEY$:IF S$<>" " THEN 190
230 CLS:RANDOMIZE TIMER
240 FOR P=1 TO N
250 T=\varnothing
26\emptyset R=INT(N*RND+1):IF W$(R)="" THEN 26\emptyset
270 LOCATE 5,6:PRINT SPACE$(2|)
280 BEEP:LOCATE 5,6:PRINT WS(R)
290 L=LEN(WS(R))
300 FOR DELAY=1 TO 3000:NEXT DELAY
31\emptyset LOCATE 5,6:PRINT SPACES(2凶)
32Ø LOCATE 5,4:PRINT "> ";
330 B$=""
34\emptyset FOR J=1 TO L+5
35\emptyset ES=INKEY$:IF ES="" THEN 350
360 IF ASC(ES)=13 THEN 42%
370 IF E$=" " THEN 27\triangleright
38\emptyset ES=UCASES (E$)
390 IF ES<"A" OR ES>"Z" THEN 350
400 PRINT ES;:B$=B$+ES
4 1 0 ~ N E X T ~ J ~ J
4 2 0 ~ I F ~ B S = W S ( R ) ~ T H E N ~ 5 2 0 ~
430 SOUND 330,2:SOUND 262,2
440 T=T+l:IF T<2 THEN 27|
450 PRINT:PRINT TAB(6);W$(R)
460 PRINT:PRINT "PRESS <RETURN> TO CONTINUE."
470 E$=INKEY$
480 IF ES<>CHRS(13) THEN 470
490 LOCATE 6,6:PRINT SPACE$(20)
5øØ PRINT:PRINT SPACE$(27)
510 GOTO 25\emptyset
520 C=C+1:LOCATE 22,C* 2+1|
530 PRINT "*"
54| SOUND 262,2:SOUND 330,2
550 SOUND 392,2:SOUND 523,6
560 W$(R)=""
570 NEXT P
580 CLS
590 FOR T=1 TO 30
60\emptyset SOUND 50\emptyset+50\emptyset*RND,2
6 1 0 ~ N E X T ~ T ~ T
620 GOTO 690
630 DATA BEAUTIFUL,FIR,SKIRT,CIRCLE
640 DATA SQUIRREL,DOCTOR,BEYOND,CLOSET
650 DATA CONNECT,CONCERN, COSTUME, PROMISE
660 DATA PRODUCTS,PROBABLY, POPULAR
670 DATA HORIZONTAL,MUSICIAN
680 DATA ELECTRICITY,ADDITION,@
690 END
```

Chapter $13=$

## Debug9ing

## Chapter 13

## Debugging

It can be frustrating to spend hours typing in a program, then have it not run properly. Before you heave the keyboard at the monitor or call yourself or the author all sorts of names, here are some suggestions on how to diagnose and solve programming problems.

## Syntax Errors

The easiest problems to correct are syntax errors. When you run the program, it will stop if there is a syntax error. The List window will appear with the program listing. The line containing the error will be outlined in orange, and an error message will appear at the top of the screen. Press the mouse arrow at the OK box by the error message, then click the cursor at the offending line to correct it.

The most likely syntax error is a mistyped BASIC word or another symbol where there should be a colon, semicolon, or comma. Make sure parentheses are in the right places and matched. Quotation marks may also need to be checked. Check also that a zero has not been mistaken for the letter $O$ or vice versa. I avoid using the letter $O$ as a variable name. You might also watch out for the letter $I$ and the number 1 and the letter $B$ and the number 8. FOR statements must be matched with NEXT statements.

## Line Number Errors

It's a little more difficult to pinpoint errors where the program seems to be running improperly. Refer to the line-by-line explanation to try to pinpoint the lines that could be causing the problem. LIST those lines to check for typing errors.

Check line numbers in branching statements such as GOTO, ON-GOTO, ON-GOSUB, GOSUB, and IF-THEN statements. Be sure to type the line numbers exactly as they are shown in the listing. One little number can cause the computer to branch to a wrong statement and thus act strangely.

## Check Variable Values

Anytime the computer stops with an error, you can print out values for variables to see what they are at that point. For example, if you get an error message and the statement is LOCATE R,C, you can type PRINT R,C in the Output window and press RETURN to see the present values for those variables. If they are incorrect, you can refer to previous lines to see how those variables were calculated. See where the variables were defined, then follow through the logic to see where they could have been altered incorrectly.

## Watch Those DATA Statements

Judging from my mail, the most common place for errors to occur in a program is in DATA statements, especially if there are lots of items with commas. Even if the error message refers to a different line, the DATA statement may be the real cause for the error. Although DATA statements can be much longer, I tried to keep them short, so they would be easier to type in.

You need to compare the corresponding READ statement with the DATA statements to make sure items are read in the right order. The error could be in a previous DATA statement if data has been read in previously.

If there is a RESTORE statement, make sure the line number is typed correctly. In DATA statements, type the numbers carefully, making sure all commas are exactly as shown in the listing. Do not end a DATA statement with a comma. It is possible that DATA lists contain commas with nothing between them. This indicates that the value read would be the null string, or " ". If you have several commas in the list, be sure you have the right number of commas.

Keep in mind that when the program stops with an error you can print the values of any variables. If you are reading data in a loop, you can print the loop counter to see how far into the DATA statements you have successfully read. You can also print the variable(s) being read to see what the last acceptable value was, then use that information to pinpoint a typing error in a DATA statement.

The listings in this book were taken directly from the computer to try to avoid typesetting errors. Although we hope the listings are error-free, the possibility of errors does exist.

After you have checked and rechecked and still haven't found the problem, you may be tempted to write the author for help. If you do write, please be specific about the type of error that occurred, and be sure to specify the program title, the name of the book, and what type of computer you are using.

## Chapter 14

## Sample Programs

## Sample Programs

You could use a calculator to calculate a mathematical formula, and it would probably be faster for one problem than the computer. However, if you have to solve many problems using the same formula, the computer can simplify the task. Program 14-1 illustrates that concept by using the formula to find a monthly payment when you borrow a certain amount of money.

The user enters an amount borrowed, the number of years for the loan, and the yearly interest rate. Prompts are given for these numbers. The computer then calculates and prints what the monthly payment would be.

After each INPUT statement, the number entered is checked to see whether it is within reasonable bounds for the formula. The formula is calculated in line 240 and is rounded to the nearest cent in line 250 .

## Program 14-1. Loan Payments

```
10 REM LOAN PAYMENTS
20 CLS
36 PRINT "** LOAN PAYMENTS **"
40 PRINT
50 PRINT "YOU WANT TO BORROW A CERTAIN"
6Ø PRINT "AMOUNT OF MONEY.
70 PRINT:PRINT "IF INTEREST IS COMPOUNDED,"
8\emptyset PRINT "WHAT IS THE MONTHLY PAYMENT?":PRINT
9\emptyset INPUT "AMOUNT BORROWED";P
100 IF P>0 THEN 130
ll\emptyset PRINT "ENTER AMOUNT MORE THAN ZERO PLEASE"
12\emptyset PRINT:GOTO 8\emptyset
136 PRINT
140 INPUT "HOW MANY YEARS";Y
150 IF Y>\emptyset THEN 18\emptyset
160 PRINT "MUST BE MORE THAN ZERO"
170 GOTO 13|
180 N=12*Y
190 PRINT
2凶| PRINT "WHAT IS THE INTEREST RATE"
210 INPUT "IN PERCENT";I
220 I=I/12\emptyset\emptyset
230 F=(l+I) ^N
24| M=P*(I*F/(F-1))
25\emptysetM=(INT(l|\emptyset* (M+.|\emptyset5)))/l|y
260 PRINT
270 PRINT "MONTHLY PAYMENT =";M
280 PRINT
290 END
```


## Chapter 14

## Adverbs

Here is a method for printing random sentences. The computer "makes up" a sentence, and the user must find the adverb in the sentence and type it. There is a quiz of ten sentences.

The words are read in from data in lines 90-120. Arrays are used to hold the words. Line 80 reads in the words. The words in the DATA statements are in the order of an article or modifier, a noun for the subject, a verb, and an adverb. The arrays for the words are A\$, B\$, C\$, and D\$, respectively, and each array has ten words.

Lines 190-200 choose one of the ten words in each array to be used for the sentence. Line 210 chooses a random number J from 1 through 3 which will determine how the sentence is written. Line 220 uses ON-GOTO to branch to the printing procedure. The first possibility (line 230 ) is $A \$, B \$, C \$, D \$$. The second possibility (line 250 ) is $\mathrm{A} \$, \mathrm{~B} \$, \mathrm{D} \$, \mathrm{C} \$$. The third possibility (line 270) is $D \$, A \$, B \$, C \$ . D$ will always be the adverb.

Line 290 receives the user's answer of what the adverb is and is called $\mathrm{V} \$$. Line 300 checks the answer. Line 310 prints the correct word if the user's answer was incorrect. Lines 330-340 print a message and increment the score for a correct answer. Lines 350-370 wait for the user to press RETURN before continuing to the next sentence.

Line 400 prints the score for ten sentences, then lines $410-450$ present the option to try again and branch appropriately.

## Program 14-2. Adverbs

```
10 REM ADVERBS
2\emptyset CLS:PRINT
3ø PRINT TAB(30);"***********"
40 PRINT TAB(30);"* ADVERBS *"
5\emptyset PRINT TAB(30);"***********"
60 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT "You will be shown a sentence."
70 PRINT:PRINT "Type the adverb then press <RETURN>."
8\emptyset FOR C=\emptyset TO 9:READ AS(C),BS(C),CS(C),DS(C):NEXT C
90 DATA THE,CAT, CRAWLED,QUICKLY,A,DOG,JUMPED,QUIETLY,MY,DEER
, RAN, HAPPILY
I\emptyset\emptyset DATA YOUR,COW, LOPED,SLYLY,HIS,FOX,WIGGLED,SLOWLY,HER,WOL
F,GALLOPED
11\emptyset DATA JOYFULLY,ITS,BOY,SPED,RAPIDLY,OUR,GIRL,CREEPED,SILE
NTLY
12\emptyset DATA THAT,BUG,HURRIED,CALMLY,ONE,BEAR,MOVED,SWIFTLY
130 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT "Press the space bar to start."
```

```
140 E$=INKEY$:IF E$<<" " THEN 140
150 RANDOMIZE TIMER
160 SCORE=0
170 FOR T=1 TO 10
18ø CLS:PRINT:PRINT
19\varnothing A=INT(1\varnothing*RND):B=INT(10*RND)
2øø C=INT(1|*RND):D=INT(10*RND)
21\varnothing J=INT(3*RND)+1
22ø ON J GOTO 23ø,25|,27ø
23ø PRINT AS(A);" ";B$(B);" ";C$(C);" ";D$(D);"."
240 GOTO 28』
25ø PRINT AS(A);" ";BS(B);" ";D$(D);" ";CS(C);"."
26| GOTO 28\emptyset
27ø PRINT DS(D);" ";AS(A);" ";B$(B);" ";CS(C);"."
28Ø PRINT:PRINT
29ø INPUT "ADVERB: ",V$:V$=UCASE$(V$)
3øø IF V$=D$(D) THEN 33ø
316 PRINT:PRINT "The adverb is ";D$(D)
32ø GOTO 35ø
33\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "CORRECT!"
340 SCORE=SCORE+1
350 PRINT:PRINT "Press <RETURN>."
360 E$=INKEY$
37ø IF E$<>CHRS(13) THEN 360
380 NEXT T
390 CLS
4øも PRINT "Your score is";SCORE;"right out of l| sentences."
410 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT "Try again? (Y/N)"
42ø E$=INKEY$
430 IF ES="Y" OR ES="Y" THEN 160
440 IF ES<<"N" AND ES<<"n" THEN 42ø
450 PRINT "NO":PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
4 6 0 ~ E N D
```


## States and Capitals

One of the most common drill programs is testing a student on the names of states and capitals. Here is a version for the Amiga. First, a map of the continental United States is drawn, then in random order a state is outlined. The user must type the name of the state. (Make sure the CAPS LOCK key is on.) If the state named is not correct, the user has a second chance. If it is incorrect twice, the state name is given and that state will appear again later in the quiz.

When the state is named correctly, the user will be asked for the capital. Again, there are two chances to get the correct answer before the correct capital is given. If the state and capital are named correctly, that state will not appear again in the quiz. A score is kept by keeping track of the number of guesses for both the state and the capital. Since there are 50 states with their 50 capitals, a perfect score would be 100 . The computer will print the number of guesses it takes to go through all the states.

Line 20 is a DIMension statement for the state array $\mathbf{S} \$$ and the capital array C\$. Lines $30-100$ clear the screen and print the title and instructions.

Line 110 reads in from data the state and the capital for the 50 states. Lines 120-280 contain the states with their capitals. Lines 290-300 wait for the user to press the space bar to continue the program.

Line 310 uses RANDOMIZE TIMER so that states will be chosen randomly. Line 320 initializes $G$ for the number of guesses. Line 330 is the beginning of the FOR-NEXT loop for the 50 states. Line 340 initializes F for a flag for incorrect answers.

Line 350 clears the screen for each new problem. Line 360 RESTOREs the data starting at line 370 for drawing the map. The DATA statements in lines 370-490 contain $x$ and y coordinates for drawing the map using the LINE command. The drawing is in lines $500-530$.

Line 540 chooses a random number $R$ from 1 to 50 . If the state was previously named correctly, $\mathrm{S} \$(\mathrm{R})$ will have been set to the null string, " ", so if the random number R points to a null string, another number must be chosen. Lines 550-580 use ON-GOSUB to go to a subroutine that will RESTORE the proper data for drawing that state. The subroutines are named by state abbreviations rather than line numbers.

Lines 590-620 draw the state. The DATA statements for each state have an ( $x 1, y 1$ ) and ( $x 2, y 2$ ) set of coordinates for the LINE command, then a number $C$ indicating how many LINE commands will be needed, and then pairs of numbers for the coordinates for the rest of the lines to complete drawing the state.

Lines 630-870 receive the answers and check them. Lines 880-920 print the number of guesses. Lines 930-950 play a tune of random tones.

If you have trouble with this program, the most likely place for errors is in typing the numbers in the DATA statements. Keep in mind that most of the numbers are pairs of $x$ and y coordinates. Make sure there are no extra commas and no commas at the ends of the lines. The subroutines are labeled with state abbreviations to help you know which DATA statements correspond to which state if you do have an error.

## Chapter 14

## Program 14-3. States and Capitals

```
10 REM STATES AND CAPITALS
20 DIM S$(50),C$(50)
30 CLS
40 LOCATE 2,22:PRINT "** UNITED STATES **"
50 LOCATE 5,6:PRINT "You will see an outline of a state."
60 LOCATE 7,6:PRINT "Type the name of the state, then its ca
pital city."
70 LOCATE 9,6:PRINT "If you get the state and capital correc
t,"
80 LOCATE 1l,ll:PRINT "it will not appear again."
90 LOCATE 13,6:PRINT "The quiz consists of all 50 states in
a random order."
10| LOCATE 15,6:PRINT "PLEASE MAKE SURE CAPS LOCK IS ON."
```

110 FOR C=1 TO 50:READ $S \$(C), C \$(C): N E X T C$
$12 \emptyset$ DATA ALABAMA, MONTGOMERY, ALASKA, JUNEAU, ARIZONA, PHOENIX, AR
KANSAS
130 DATA LITTLE ROCK, CALIFORNIA,SACRAMENTO, COLORADO, DENVER
140 DATA CONNECTICUT,HARTFORD, DELAWARE, DOVER,FLORIDA,TALLAHA
SSEE
150 DATA GEORGIA, ATLANTA, HAWAII, HONOLULU, IDAHO, BOISE, ILLINOI
S
160 DATA SPRINGFIELD, INDIANA, INDIANAPOLIS,IOWA,DES MOINES,KA
NSAS
$17 \varnothing$ DATA TOPEKA, KENTUCKY,FRANKFORT, LOUISIANA,BATON ROUGE,MAI
NE
$18 \emptyset$ DATA AUGUSTA, MARYLAND, ANNAPOLIS, MASSACHUSETTS, BOSTON, MIC
HIGAN
190 DATA LANSING,MINNESOTA,ST. PAUL,MISSISSIPPI,JACKSON,MISS
OURI
20ض DATA JEFFERSON CITY, MONTANA, HELENA, NEBRASKA, LINCOLN, NEVA
DA
210 DATA CARSON CITY,NEW HAMPSHIRE, CONCORD,NEW JERSEY,TRENTO
N
220 DATA NEW MEXICO, SANTA FE,NEW YORK,ALBANY,NORTH CAROLINA,
RALEIGH
23Ø DATA NORTH DAKOTA,BISMARCK, OHIO, COLUMBUS, OKLAHOMA, OKLAHO
MA CITY
240 DATA OREGON, SALEM, PENNSYLVANIA,HARRISBURG,RHODE ISLAND,P
ROVIDENCE
250 DATA SOUTH CAROLINA,COLUMBIA,SOUTH DAKOTA,PIERRE,TENNESS
EE
$26 \emptyset$ DATA NASHVILLE,TEXAS,AUSTIN,UTAH,SALT LAKE CITY,VERMONT
270 DATA MONTPELIER,VIRGINIA, RICHMOND, WASHINGTON, OLYMPIA
280 DATA WEST VIRGINIA, CHARLESTON,WISCONSIN,MADISON,WYOMING,
CHEYENNE
29ø LOCATE 22,14:PRINT "Press the space bar to start."
30り AS=INKEYS:IF AS<>" " THEN $3 \varnothing \varnothing$
$31 \varnothing$ RANDOMIZE TIMER
$320 \mathrm{G}=\mathrm{b}$
330 FOR N=1 TO 50
340 $\mathrm{F}=\varnothing$
350 CLS
REM DRAW MAP
360 RESTORE $37 \triangleq$
370 dATA $280,32,356,32,356,28,364,28,360,32,398,35,380,42,39$
0.42

## Chapter 14

386 DATA $41 \doteq, 37,406,40,42 \doteq, 43,432,40,444,43,436,43,448,46,44$ 6，53
390 DATA $448,54,454,51,46 \Downarrow, 56,456,64,466,63,486,54,486,53,50$ 2，48
4øø DATA $512,40,536,36,540,28,542,22,546,23,555,21,566,31,56$ 8，30
410 DATA $568,33,550,40,548,46,555,51,558,51,558,49,558,51,55$
5，51
$42 \varnothing$ DATA $528,61,532,63,526,79,532,85,528,91,492,110,492,118$ ， 512，135
430 DATA $512,142,508,145,496,140,486,133,484,126,472,123,46 \emptyset$ ， 125
440 DATA $454,123,420,126,420,129,424,131,404,131,404,129,396$ .128
$45 \emptyset$ DATA $392,130,38 \emptyset, 13 \emptyset, 344,138,344,147,350,149,332,148,324$ .144
460 DATA $326,142,366,130,296,130,288,133,278,130,272,123,268$ .123
470 DA＇TA $260,119,246,118,246,120,216,118,186,110,186,168,166$ ， 108
$48 \emptyset$ DATA $164,104,158,101,146,95,128,8 \emptyset, 134,76,128,76,124,72$ ， 120，62
490 DATA $126,54,128,50,142,35,144,24,156,26,160,23$
$500 \operatorname{LINE}(160,23)-(224,28)$
510 FOR T＝1 TO 97
520 READ X，Y：LINE－（X，Y）
530 NEXT T
REM DRAW STATE
540 R＝INT（5も＊RND＋1）：IF SS（R）＝＂＂THEN 540
550 IF R＞25 THEN 580
$56 \emptyset$ ON R GOSUB ALA，ALS，AZ，AK，CA，COL，CON，DE，FL，GA，HA，ID，IL，IN ，IO，KA ，KY，LA，ME ，MD，MAS，MICH，MINN，MISS，MO
570 GOTO 59』
580 ON R－25 GOSUB MONT，NEB，NEV，NH，NJ，NM，NY，NC，ND，OH，OKL，ORE，
PA，RI，SC，SD，TN，TX，UT，VT，VIR，WA，WV，WI，WY
59も READ X1，Y1，X2，Y2，C：LINE（X1，Y1）－（X2，Y2）
600 FOR J＝1 TO C
610 READ X，Y：LINE－（X，Y）
620 NEXT J
630 SOUND 1300，2：G＝G＋1
640 LOCATE 21，2：INPUT＂STATE＂；SS\＄：SSS＝UCASES（SS\＄）
650 IF SS\＄＝S\＄（R）THEN 740
660 SOUND 330，2：SOUND 262，2
$67 \emptyset \mathrm{~F}=\mathrm{F}+1: I \mathrm{~F}=2$ THEN 7øٍ
680 LINE $(\searrow, 16 \searrow)-(4 \searrow x, 199), \not, x, B F$
690 GOTO 630
7めD PRINT＂The state is＂；S\＄（R）
710 PRINT：PRINT＂Press the space bar to continue．＂；
720 AS＝INKEYS
730 IF AŞ＝＂＂THEN 340 ELSE 720
740 SOUND 262，2：SOUND 330，2
750 SOUND 392，2：SOUND 523，4：F2＝ø
760 G＝G＋1：LOCATE 22，2：INPUT＂CAPITAL＂；CCS：CCS＝UCASE\＄（CC\＄）
770 IF CC\＄＝C\＄（R）THEN 84も
780 SOUND 330，2：SOUND 262，2
790 F2＝F2＋1：IF F2＝2 THEN 820
8øØ LINE（ $(1,168)-(4 \emptyset \emptyset, 199), \varnothing$, BF
810 GOTO 760
820 PRINT＂The capital is＂；C\＄（R）
830 GOTO 710

## Chapter 14

```
840 SOUND 262,2:SOUND 330,2
850 SOUND 392,2:SOUND 523,4
860 S$(R)="":FOR D=1`TO 2|D|:NEXT D
870 NEXT N
886 CLS
890 PRINT:PRINT "A perfect score is 100."
9Ø0 PRINT:PRINT
910 PRINT "You had";G;"guesses."
92| PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
930 FOR C=1 TO 40
940 SOUND 5Ø0*RND+30ø,1
950 NEXT C
960 GOTO 2740
```

ALA: RESTORE Al
Al: DATA $426,124,426,99,5,448,99$
DATA 456,112,458,119,436,119,438,123 RETURN
ALS: RESTORE A2
A2: DATA $80,26,76,5,26,48,1,28,6,38,12,22,12,24,16,34,16$
DATA $34,18,26,21,20,26,26,24,24,29,38,31,32,35,0,46$
DATA $32,36,48,32,56,25,52,30,66,27,76,29,84,29$
DATA 106,40,106,36,114,39,96,28,88,29
LOCATE 2,8:PRINT "?"
RETURN
AZ: RESTORE A3
A3: DATA 236,119,242,91,7,200,88,196,93,192,92
DATA $192,102,188,106,19 \not, 108,186,118$
RETURN
AK: RESTORE A4
A4: DATA $368,94,406,94,9,406,96,412,96$
DATA 410,160,400,107,400,112,374,112
DATA 374,110,368,110,368,94
RETURN
CA: RESTORE Cl
Cl: DATA $128,55,160,58,6,152,73,191,98$
DATA 192,102,186,109,166,108,164,1ヵ4
RETURN
COL: RESTORE C2
C2: DATA 248,72,304,72,3,304,92,24४,92,248,72
RETURN
CON: RESTORE C3
C3: DATA $534,58,532,52,2,546,51,546,55$
LOCATE 8,69:PRINT "\"
LOCATE 9,70:PRINT "?"
RETURN
DE: RESTORE Dl
Dl: DATA 520,67,524,72,2,528,72,522,67
LOCATE 9,70:PRINT "<?"
RETURN
FL: RESTORE FI
Fl: DATA 438,123,434,119,6,456,119,456,120
DATA 484,120,486,121,486,117,492,117
RETURN
GA: RESTORE Gl
Gl: DATA $490,110,468,97,8,448,97,456,111,454,115,460,119,48$
4,119
DATA 486,121,486,117,492,117
RETURN
HA: RESTORE HI

## Chapter 14

Hl: DATA $56,8 \emptyset, 6 \emptyset, 8 \emptyset, 4,64,84,54,86,5 \emptyset, 81,54,8 \emptyset$
LOCATE 10,2:PRINT "O 0 ."
LOCATE 9,9:PRINT "?"
RETURN
ID: RESTORE II
Il: DATA 200,27,194,40,11,198,41,188,48,184,56,232,57,236,5
DATA $220,51,216,45,212,46,214,40,2 \searrow 6,36,208,27$
RETURN
IL: RESTORE I2
I2: DATA $418,62,396,62,10,406,66,390,74,398,82$
DATA 4ø2,80,402,84,414,90,424,86
DATA $426,86,424,66,418,62$
RETURN
IN: RESTORE I3
I3: DATA $446,64,428,64,7,422,66,426,79$
DATA $424,85,438,83,442,79,446,78,446,64$
RETURN
IO: RESTORE I4
I4: DATA 390,58,350,58,7,348,63,356,74
DATA 390,74,394,69,400,66,390,61,390,58
RETURN
KA: RESTORE Kl
K1: DATA 36ט,77,304,77,4,304,92
DATA $368,92,366,82,360,77$
RETURN
KY: RESTORE K2
K2: DATA 4, $2,93,4 \emptyset 2,90,16,424,85,438,83$
DATA 442,79,460,80,464,83,474,86
DATA 464,91,412,91,412,93,462,93
RETURN
LA: RESTORE Ll
Ll: DATA 418,125,416,122,7,398,122
DATA 404,116,400,111,376,111
DATA 376,117,381,123,378,129
RETURN
ME: RESTORE Ml
Ml: DATA 536,34,548,45,0
LOCATE 4,74:PRINT "?"
RETURN
MD: RESTORE M2
M2: DATA $536,72,522,72,7,526,67,49 \triangleq, 69$
DATA 490,72,504,70,512,72,512,74,522,75
RETURN
MAS: RESTORE M3
M3: DATA 548,48,532,48,3,532,52,548,52,548,54 RETURN
MICH: RESTORE M4
M4: DATA $392,42,410,45,8,416,48,418,45$
DATA $436,44,424,51,424,56$
DATA $430,60,428,64,456,64$
RETURN
MINN: RESTORE M5
M5: DATA $342,32,346,47,6,342,48,348,59$
DATA 392,59,378,52,376,47,380,42 RETURN
MISS: RESTORE M6
M6: DATA 428,124,426,100,7,406,106
DATA $406,107,406,111,404,115$
DATA 398,122,416,122,418,126
RETURN

## Chapter 14

MO: RESTORE M7
M7: DATA $392,74,356,74,11,366,82,368,95$
DATA $406,95,406,97,415,97,416,92$
DATA $416,96,402,84,462,86,398,82,392,74$
RETURN
MONT: RESTORE M8
M8: DATA $208,27,206,36,7,214,40,212,46$
DATA $216,45,220,52,236,50,290,50,290,32$
RETURN
NEB: RESTORE N1
Nl: DATA $288,62,288,72,6,364,72,364,78$
DATA $360,78,350,64,332,62,288,62$
RETURN
NEV: RESTORE N2
N2: DATA $2 \varnothing 4,61,156,60,5,156,74,192,96$
DATA $196,92,202,94,264,61$
RETURN
NH: RESTORE N3
N3: DATA $536,34,548,45,2,534,48,536,36$
LOCATE 6,72:PRINT "<?"
RETURN
NJ: RESTORE N4
N4: DATA $534,58,522,58,4,522,62,526,64$
DATA 520,67,530,69
LOCATE 9,70:PRINT "?"
RETURN
NM: RESTORE N5
N5: DATA 238,120,240,91,4,296,91
DATA 296,117,260,117,260,119
RETURN
NY: RESTORE N6
N6: DATA $476,59,516,55,6,532,59,528,66$
DATA 548,56,532,59,530,47,524,38
LOCATE 7,65:PRINT "?"
RETURN
NC: RESTORE N7
N7: DATA $526,83,478,87,4,460,96,488,94$
DATA 5ø2,95,512,98
RETURN
ND: RESTORE N8
N8: DATA 290, 32, 290, 47,2,346,47,342,32 RETURN
OH: RESTORE Ol
Ol: DATA $456,63,446,63,4,446,76,468,79$ DATA 480,71,480,58
RETURN
OKL: RESTORE 02
02: DATA 294,92,368,92,5,372,108,320,106
DATA 32ø,96,294,96,294,92
RETURN
ORE: RESTORE 03
O3: DATA $144,33,152,38,5,260,41,188,48$
DATA 19め,50,184,6も,128,55
RETURN
PA: RESTORE Pl
Pl: DATA $480,59,480,69,6,522,67,526,63$
DATA 524,62,524,57,516,56,480,59
RETURN
RI: RESTORE RI
Rl: DATA 548,54,548,50,2,542,50,542,55
LOCATE 8,70:PRINT "\"

LOCATE 9,71:PRINT "?"
RETURN
SC: RESTORE Sl
Sl: DATA $490,110,468,97,4,488,94$
DATA $492,96,502,95,512,99$
RETURN
SD: RESTORE S2
S2: DATA $344,47,288,47,5,288,61,334,61$
DATA $350,63,348,62,344,47$
RETURN
TN: RESTORE Tl
Tl: DATA $424,9 \searrow, 480,90,5,456,98,404,98$
DATA $412,92,424,92,424,90$
RETURN
TX: RESTORE T2
T2: DATA 260, 118, 296, 118,9, 296,95,320,95
DATA 320,106,340,108,366,108,374,110
DATA $376,118,380,122,378,130$
RETURN
UT RESTORE UI
Ul: DATA $232,63,264,63,5,204,96,248,90$
DATA 248,71,232,71,232,63
RETURN
VT: RESTORE V1
Vl: DATA $536,36,534,49,2,528,49,524,38$
RETURN
VIR: RESTORE V2
V2: DATA $524,75,512,74,9,512,72,504,7 \triangleq$
DATA $496,76,492,76,488,82,480,84$
DATA $472,84,462,88,528,84$
RETURN
WA: RESTORE W1
Wl: DATA 200, 26, 196, 40, 2, 152, 38, 144, 33
RETURN
WV: RESTORE W2
W2: DATA $492,70,482,70,13,480,68,480,72,468,78,470,82$
DATA $478,84,488,82,492,76,496,77$
DATA 50Ø, 71,506,71,506,69,492,72,492,70
RETURN
WI: RESTORE W3
W3: DATA $380,42,376,47,11,378,53,390,57$
DATA 390,61, 396,63,418,63,416,55
DATA $420,47,412,51,414,47,408,45,392,42$
RETURN
WY: RESTORE W4
W4: DATA 288,52,224,52,3,224,71,288,71,288,52
RETURN
2740 END

## Typing

A common use for a home computer is to learn touch typing, or keyboarding. The computer is ideal for learning to type because the keyboard is like the keys on a typewriter, and the computer can give immediate feedback. Typing tutorials also are useful if you like to program, because you will want to learn to type efficiently.

This program is called "Type1" because it is only the first unit of a possible typing course. It is a tutorial for the "home position" keys only. Subsequent programs could teach the rest of the keys in a progressive order. Additional programs could present drills to improve typing skills after the key positions and fingering are learned.

Outlines of the hands are drawn by using LINE commands. The DATA statements containing coordinates are in subroutines in lines 270-460. The subroutine in lines 210-260 reads the data and draws the lines.

Lines 570-580 contain data for the keys with their corresponding column position and a frequency for the SOUND command when that key is indicated. Line 590 reads in this information for the eight home row keys. The LOCATE command is used to place the cursor in the proper position for printing.

Lines 900-910 contain phrases that can be typed by using only the home keys. The quiz randomly chooses from these phrases, and the student must type five phrases correctly to complete the quiz.

## Program 14-4. Type 1

```
10 REM TYPEl
20 CLS
50 PRINT TAB(25);"T Y P E - E T T E"
60 PRINT:PRINT TAB(3|);"UNIT 1"
7y PRINT:PRINT TAB(27);"HOME POSITION"
80 PRINT:PRINT:PRIN'\Gamma
90 PRINT "CAPS LOCK SHOULD BE ON"
100 GOTO 470
120 PRINT:PRINT "PRESS ANY KEY TO CONTINUE."
140 E$=INKEY$:IF E$="" THEN R=RND:GOTO 140
150 RETURN
160 LOCATE 10,A(J):PRINT L$(J)
170 SOUND F(J),3
180 E$=INKEYS:IF E$<>L$(J) THEN 180
190 LOCATE 1Ø,A(J):PRINT " "
200 RETURN
21\emptyset READ X1,Y1,X2,Y2,N
22Ø LINE(X1,Y1)-(X2,Y2), 3
230 FOR I=1 TO N
240 READ X2,Y2:LINE - (X2,Y2), 3
250 NEXT I
260 RETURN
27| REM LEFT HAND
28\emptyset RESTORE 30\emptyset
300 DATA 170,199,23凶,160,36,230,158
305 DATA 224,156,208,156,188,162,160,171
310 DATA 152,171,148,166,152,155,182,112
315 DATA 184,104,180,99,172,98,156,111
320 DATA 142,129,130,139,142,92,136,88
```

```
325 DATA 128,86,120,88,112,100,96,138
330 DATA 94,93,92,89,86,87,80,88
335 DATA 72,92,70,97,64,114,62,139
346 DATA 60,142,48,111,40,108,32,108
345 DATA 26,111,28,128,24,199
350 GOSUB 210
36\emptyset RETURN
37Ø REM RIGHT HAND
380 RESTORE 390
390 DATA 416,199,370,156,26,372,151
395 DATA 382,150,392,152,432,166
40Ø DATA 422,136,408,107,412,100,418,98
405 DATA 43ø,101,456,142,454,92,464,87
410 DATA 476,87,484,92,496,140,516,98
415 DATA 528,92,534,92,544,96,534,144
420 DATA 566,112,576,110,582,115,574,131
425 DATA 554,163,552,199
430 GOSUB 210
4 6 0 ~ R E T U R N
47Ø PRINT:PRINT
480 PRINT "This unit will teach you the 'home' position of t
ouch typing."
5\emptyset\emptyset PRINT:PRINT "As you learn to type, your fingers will res
t lightly"
510 PRINT "on these 'home' keys."
520 PRINT:PRINT "You will gradually learn to type other lett
ers, but your fingers"
530}\mathrm{ PRIN'T "should always return to the home position."
540 PRINT:PRINT
560 RESTORE 570
57| DATA A,6, 262,S,12, 292,D,18,336,F,24,349
580 DATA J,53,392,K,60,440,L,68,494,;,74,523
590 FOR M=1 TO 8:READ LS(M),A(M),F(M):NEXT M
600 GOSUB 120
6 1 0 ~ C L S ~
620 GOSUB 280:GOSUB 380
630 LINE (192,136)-(400,147),1,BF
640 PRINT "Place your fingers on the keys as shown."
6 5 0 ~ P R I N T ~
660 PRINT "Your right thumb will press the space bar."
670 FOR M=1 TO 8
680 LOCATE 10,A(M):PRINT LS(M)
69ø SOUND F(M),3
700 NEXT M
710 LOCATE 4,2:GOSUB 120
72| LINE (\varnothing,|)-(600,8\emptyset),0,BF
730 LOCATE 1,4
740 PRINT "Type each letter as it appears."
760 FOR T=1 TO 3:FOR J=1 TO 8
770 GOSUB 160
78| NEXT J:NEXT T
790 FOR T=1 TO 30
80\emptyset J=INT(8*RND+1):IF J=K THEN 80\emptyset
8 1 0 ~ K = J ~
820 GOSUB 160
8 3 0 ~ N E X T ~ T ~ T ~
840 LOCATE 1,4:PRINT "CHOOSE: 1 Try again";SPACES(12)
85| PRINT TAB(13);"2 Continue program"
860 ES=INKEY$:IF ES="1" THEN 720
870 IF ES<>"2" THEN 860
880 CLS
```

```
890 RESTORE 90\
900 DATA A SAD LAD;,A FAD;,ASK A LAD;,A SAD FAD,A LAD ASKS D
AD
910 DATA ALFALFA,ALAS A SAD DAD,DAD ASKS A LAD,ASK DAD
920 FOR T=1 TO 9:READ PS(T):NEXT
930 PRINT "Use your right little finger to press <RETURN>."
940 PRINT
950 PRINT "TYpe the phrase shown, then press <RETURN>."
960 PRINT
970 PRINT "You must type five phrases correctly to end the d
rill."
1050 GOSUB 120
1060 FOR T=1 TO 5
1070 CLS
1080 FOR X=80 TO 480 STEP 40
1090 LINE (X,62)-(X+24,74),1,BF
l10V NEXT X
1110 COLOR 2,1
1120 LOCATE 9,12:PRINT "A";SPC(4);"S";SPC(4);"D";SPC(4);"F";
1130 LOCATE 9,42:PRINT "J";SPC(4);"K";SPC(4);"L";SPC(4);";";
1140 COLOR 1,|
1150 J=INT (9*RND+1)
116U IF PS(J)="" THEN 1150
1170 LOCATE 14,30:PRINT PS(J)
1180 COLOR 2,3:LOCATE 15,28:INPUT B$:COLOR 1,&
1190 IF BS=P$(J) THEN 1230
120\varnothing SOUND 330,2:SOUND 262,2
1210 GOSUB 120
1220 GOTO 107%
123ø SOUND 262,3:SOUND 33凶,3
124\emptyset SOUND 392,3:SOUND 523,6
1250 PS(J)=""
1260 NEXT T
1270 PRINT:PRINT
128凶 PRINT "CHOOSE: 1 Practice letters"
1290 PRINT TAB(10);"2 Practice words"
130V PRINT TAB(10);"3 End program"
1310 AS=INKEY$:IF AS="1" THEN 610
1320 IF AS=" 2" THEN 880
1330 IF A$<>"3" THEN 1310
1340 CLS
135v END
```


## Algebra: Binomial Multiplication

While there is a lot of educational software available for younger children, material for older students is not so readily available. This algebra program offers something for an older student. I have written this program for other computers and it has been so popular that I am including it here. Binomial multiplication is just one concept in algebra, but this program can give you ideas so that you can write programs for other topics in algebra.

This program is for practicing multiplication of two binomials. First, an example problem is shown. It is printed
with lines 120-220. Lines $240-570$ show the multiplication in general form.

Lines $580-860$ present the first problem for the student. It contains only positive numbers, and the numeric factors are random numbers A and B from 1 through 3 (so the results will always be one-digit numbers). Lines $890-990$ print another example problem, and lines 1000-1010 call a subroutine to present a problem with positive numbers and coefficients for all factors.

Lines $1030-1100$ print a screen about using positive and negative numbers. Line 1110 calls the subroutine to present a problem which can contain positive and negative numbers.

Lines 1130-1280 print more information.
Lines 1300-1350 are the subroutine to wait for the student to press RETURN before continuing the program. Lines 1360-1370 are the subroutine to play the uh-oh tones for an incorrect response. Lines 1380-1390 play the arpeggio for a correct response.

Lines $1400-1450$ are the subroutine to receive an answer for a number. A question mark is blinked in the position specified by ROW,C.

Lines 1460-1530 present the option to have another similar problem or to continue the program. If any part of the problem is answered incorrectly, another problem is presented. If the problem is correct, then the program proceeds to this subroutine and the student may choose whether to practice more or to go on.

Lines 1540-2050 contain the subroutine to print a problem with random numbers. T may equal 1 or 2 . If T is 1 , all the numbers are positive. A, B, D, and E are the coefficients and factors to be multiplied. F is a flag to indicate an incorrect answer. The SGN function is used to determine the sign of a product or sum.

Lines 2060-2170 are the subroutine to get the plus or minus sign on problems that contain positive and negative numbers.

Lines $2180-2270$ position the numbers in answers depending on whether they are one digit or two digits.

## Program 14-5. Algebra

20 CLS
30 RANDOMIZE TIMER

## Chapter 14

```
7\emptyset PRINT TAB(20);"BINOMIAL MULTIPLICATION"
8| PRINT:PRINT "This program discusses multiplication of two
    binomials,"
90 PRINT
10\emptyset PRINT "such as (x+5) times (x+4)."
110 GOSUB 1300
120 PRINT "Compare algebraic multiplication to numeric multi
plication:"
130 PRINT:PRINT
14\varnothing PRINT TAB(1Ø);"l 2";TAB(60);"x + 2"
150 PRINT
160 PRINT TAB(10);"1 3";TAB(60);"x + 3"
176 PRINT TAB(8);"___"TAB(58);"_______
180 PRINT
190 PRINT TAB(10);"3 6";TAB(59);"3x + 6"
195 PRINT TAB(55):"2"
2Ø0 PRINT TAB(8);"l 2";TAB(54);"x + 2x"
210 PRINT TAB(7);"_";TAB(54);"
```

$\qquad$

```
215 PRINT TAB(55);"2"
22も PRINT TAB(8);"1 5 6";TAB(54);"x + 5x + 6"
230 GOSUB 1300
240 CC=3
25\emptyset PRINT "IN GENERAL,
260 PRINT:PRINT
27| PRINT TAB(40);"x + ";
280 COLOR 3.0:PRINT "a"
290 COLOR 1,0:PRINT:PRINT TAB(40);"x + ";
30ø COLOR 3.0:PRINT "b"
310 COLOR 1,0:PRINT TAB(39);"_"
320 PRINT:COLOR 3,|
330 PRINT TAB(39);"b";
340 COLOR 1,\emptyset:PRINT "x + ";
35| COLOR 3,0:PRINT "ao"
360 COLOR 1,0:PRINT TAB(32);"2"
370 PRINT TAB(31);"x + ";
380 COLOR 3,b:PRINT "a";
396 COLOR l,\emptyset:PRINT "x"
400 PRINT TAB(31);"
            "
    PRINT TAB(32);"\overline{2"}
    PRINT TAB(31);"x + ";
    COLOR 3,D:PRINT "(a+b)";
    COLOR 1,\varnothing:PRINT "x + ";
    COLOR 3,\varnothing:PRINT "ab"
    COLOR 1,|
    PKINT:PKINT
    PRINT "The first term is x * x"
    PRINT "The last term is ";
    COLOR 3,0:PRINT "a";
    COLOR 1,|:PRINT " * ";
    COLOR 3,\varnothing:PRINT "b"
    COLOR 1,|:PRINT "Tne middle term combines ";
    COLOR 3.D:PRINT "a";
    COLOR 1,\varnothing:PRINT " and ";
    COLOR 3,0:PRINT "b";
    COLOR 1,0:PRINT " multiplied by x"
    GOSUB 1300
    PRINT "NOW YOU MULTIPLY:"
        A=INT( 3*RND)+1:B=INT(3*RND)+1:F=0
        PRINT:PRINT TAB(50);"x +";A
        PRINT:PRINT TAB(50);"x +";B
        PRINT TAB(49);"
```

$\qquad$

## Chapter 14

630 PRINT
640 PRINT B；＂TIMES TOP ROW＂；TAB（49）；＂？x＋？＂
650 ROW $=8: C=49$ ：GOSUB 1400
660 IF VAL（K\＄）$=$ B THEN 680
670 GOSUB 1360：GOTO 650
680 C＝54：GOSUB 14øø
$69 \varnothing$ IF VAL（KS）$=\mathrm{B}^{*}$ A THEN 710
7リØ GOSUB 136も：GOTO 680
710 PRINT：PRINT TAB（45）：＂2＂
720 PRINT＂x TIMES TOP ROW＂；TAB（44）；＂x＋ $3 \times 1$
730 ROW $=10$ ： $\mathrm{C}=49$ ：GOSUB 140
740 IF VAL $(K \$)=A$ THEN 760
756 GOSUB 1360：GOTO 730
760 PRINT：PRINT TAB（44）；STRING\＄（11，＂＿＂）
770 PRINT TAB（45）：＂2＂
780 PRINT＂ADD＂；TAB（44）；＂x＋ $3 x+3 "$
790 ROW＝13：GOSUB $140 \emptyset$
8 8も IF VAL（K\＄）＝A＋B THEN 82も
810 GOSUB 1360：GOTO 790
820 C＝54：GOSUB 14ØØ
830 IF VAL（K\＄）$=A * B$ THEN 850
840 GOSUB 1360：GOTO 820
850 IF F＝Ø THEN 87ø
860 GOSUB 13凶0：GOTO 580
870 GOSUB 1460
880 IF KS＝＂1＂THEN 580
890 PRINT＂There may be coefficients of the first term，＂
900 PRINT＂but the rules don＇t change．＂
910 PRINT：PRINT＂For example，＂
920 PRINT：PRINT TAB（30）：＂2y＋5＂
93凶 PRINT：PRINT TAB（30）；＂3y＋1＂
940
950 PRINT：PRINT TAB（30）；＂ $2 y+5 "$
955 PRINT TAB（25）：＂2＂
960 PRINT TAB（23）；＂6y＋15y＂
970 PRINT TAB（23）；STRING\＄（13，＂＿＂）
975
980
990
1000
1010
1020 （FK\＄＂1＂
THEN 1010
1ø3ض PRINT＂Binomials may contain＋or－numbers．＂
1040 PRINT：PRINT＂Multiply the numbers as usual，and＂
1ø5も PRINT：PRINT＂remember the rules for the signs．＂
106ض PRINT：PRINT TAB（10）：＂＋＊＋＝＋＂
1ø7ø PRINT：PRINT TAB（10）；＂＋＊－＝－＂
1ø8Ø PRINT：PRINT TAB（1Ø）：＂－＊＋＝－＂
1690 PRINT：PRINT TAB（10）；＂－＊$=+"$
1100 GOSUB 13ضv
1110 $T=2: G O S U B 1550$
1120 IF K\＄＝＂1＂THEN 1110
1130 PRINT＂There may be cases when the middle term becomes zero＂
1140 PRINT
1150 PRINT＂so you do not need to specify the middle term．＂
1160 PRINT：PRINT
1170 PRINT＂$\quad$＋ $3^{\prime \prime} ; T A B(4 \|) ; " 2 y+2 "$
1180 PRINT：PRINT＂$\quad$－ $3^{\prime \prime} ; \operatorname{TAB}(4 \varnothing) ; " 4 y-4 "$
1196 PRINT＂＂；TAB（4も）；＂＂
1195 PRINT：PRINT TAB（5）；＂2＂；TAB（42）；＂2＂

```
1200 PRINT " x - 9";TAB(4|);"8y - 8"
1210 GOSUB 130.
122\emptyset PRINT "Other multiplication problems include + or -"
1230 PRINT:PRINT "numbers in the first term"
124| PRINT:PRINT "and/or alphabetic characters as coefficien
ts"
1250 PRINT:PRINT "for either term."
1260 PRINT:PRINT
127| PRINT "This completes this unit of instruction.":PRINT:
PRINT
1280 GOTO 228\emptyset
1290 STOP
1300 LOCATE 23,1:PRINT "PRESS <RETURN>.";
1310 E$=INKEYS
1320 IF ES="" THEN 1310
1330 IF ASC(E$)<>13 THEN 1310
1340 CLS
1350 RETURN
1360 SOUND 330,2:SOUND 262,2:F=1
1370 RETURN
138| SOUND 262,2:SOUND 336,2:SOUND 392,2:SOUND 523,4
1390 RETURN
1400 SOUND 1300,2
1416 K$=INKEY$:IF K$<>"" THEN 1440
1420 LOCATE ROW,C:PRINT "?";
143\emptyset LOCATE ROW,C:PRINT " ";:GOTO 141\emptyset
1440 LOCATE ROW,C:PRINT K$;
1450 RETURN
1460 LOCATE 22,1
1470 PRINT "CHOOSE: l ANOTHER PROBLEM"
148\emptyset PRINT TAB(1\varnothing);"2 CONTINUE PROGRAM"
1490 SOUND 13凶\emptyset,2
15|も K$=INKEYS
1510 IF K$<>"1" AND K$<>"2" THEN 1500
1520 CLS
1530 RETURN
1540 IF T=1 THEN 1590
1550 SD=(-1)^(INT (2*RND)+1)
1560 IF SD=1 THEN SDS="+" ELSE SDS="-"
1570 SE=(-1)^(INT(2*RND)+1)
1580 IF SE=1 THEN SES="+" ELSE SES="-"
1590 CLS
160\emptyset A=INT(7*RND) +1:B=INT (7*RND) +1
1610 D=INT(7*RND)+1:E=INT(7*RND) +1:F=\varnothing
1620 IF A=B AND D=E THEN 160y
1630 IF (A*E*SE=(-1)*B*D*SD) THEN 1600
1640 AS=RIGHT$(STR$(A),1)
1650 B$=RIGHT$(STRS(B),1)
1660 X$=CHR$ ( 87+INT (4*RND)+32)
167| PRINT "MULTIPLY":PRINT
1680 PRINT TAB(29);AS;X$;" ";SDS;" ";D
1690 PRINT:PRINT TAB(29);BS;X$;" ";SES;" ";E
17@も PRINT TAB(28);" ":PRINT
|"10 PRINT SES;RIGHT\(STRS(E),1);" * TOP ROW";TAB(30);XS;" +
1720 ROW=8:IF T=1 THEN 174|
1730 C=26:S$=SE$:GOSUB 2060
1740 CC=27:P=A*E:GOSUB 2180
1750 IF T=1 THEN 179|
1760 C=32:SS=SGN(SE*SD)
1770 IF SS=1 THEN S$="+" ELSE S$="-"
```


## Chapter 14

```
1780 GOSUB 206Ø
1790 CC=33:P=D*E:GOSUB 218凶
1800 PRINT:PRINT TAB(24);"2"
1810 PRINT " "BS;XS;" * TOP ROW";TAB(23);XS;" + ";XS
1820 ROW=ROW+2:CC=2\emptyset:P=A*B:GOSUB 218\emptyset
1830 IF T=1 THEN 1850
1840 C=26:S$=SDS:GOSUB 2060
1850 CC=27:P=B*D:GOSUB 2180
1860 PRINT TAB(21);STRING$(15,"_")
1870 PRINT TAB(24);"2"
1880 PRINT " ADD";TAB(23);XS;" + ";XS;" +"
1890 ROW=ROW+3:CC=20:P=A*B:GOSUB 2180
190V M=A*E*SE+B*D*SD
1910 IF T=1 THEN 1950
1920 C=26:SS=SGN(M)
1930 IF SS=1 THEN S$="+" ELSE S$="-"
194凶 GOSUB 206凶
1950 CC=27:P=ABS (M):GOSUB 218内
1960 IF T=1 THEN 20\emptyset\emptyset
197(0 C=32:SS=SGN (SE*SD)
1980 IF SS=1 THEN SS="+" ELSE S$="-"
1990 GOSUB 2060
2ø\emptysetø CC=33:P=D*E:GOSUB 218\emptyset
2010 GOSUB 1380
202\emptyset IF F=1 THEN GOSUB 130|:GOTO 154|
2030 GOSUB 146\emptyset
2040 IF K$="1" THEN 1540
2050 RETURN
2060 SOUND 1300,2
2070 K$=INKEY$:IF K$<>"" THEN 2110
2W80 LOCATE ROW,C:PRINT "+";
209\emptyset LOCATE ROW,C:PRINT "-";
21ø0 GOTO 207!
2110 LOCATE ROW,C:PRINT K$;
2120 IF K$=S$ THEN 2160
2130 IF S$="+" AND K$="=" THEN 2160
2140 IF S$="-" AND K$=" "" THEN 2160
2150 GOSUB 136%
2160 LOCATE ROW,C:PRINT S$
2170 RETURN
218\emptyset L=LEN(STRS (P))-1
2190 IF L=1 THEN CC=CC+1
2200 C$="":FOR T=1 TO L
2210 C=CC+T:GOSUB 140y
2220 C$=C$+K$
2230 NEXT T
2240 IF VAL(CS)=P THEN 2270
2250 GOSUB 1360
2260 FOR T=1 TO L:LOCATE ROW,CC+L:PRINT " ";:NEXT T:GOTO 22\emptyset
0
2270 RETURN
2280 END
```


## Index

ABS(x) 124
addresses 59
"Adverbs" program 180-81
"Algebra" program 192-96
\&H 93, 94
AREA 95, 96
AREAFILL 93-96
arrays 49, 59-62, 67, 70
two-dimensional 61, 62
arrow keys 166
ASCII codes 19, 121-24, 166
ATN(x) 124
BF 93
blitter objects. See bobs
bobs 99-101
boot up. See starting the system
"Braille" program 67, 69-70
branching 152
conditional 46, 47
break 42, 91
brownout 10
channel 115
CHR\$ 122
CIRCLE 91, 92
CLOSE 99
CLS 5
COLOR 20, 21, 89
command 6
constant 6
control 116
"Cookie File" program 72-75
COS(x) 124
counter 42
"Counting Shapes program" 134-36
DATA 59, 63-67, 70, 106, 174
debugging 173-75
DEF FN 125
DEFINT 84
DELETE 14
delimiters 17
DIMension 62, 84
editing 11, 14
ellipse 92
ELSE 46
END 5
errors
line number 173
syntax 173
execute 7
EXP(x) 124
"Flight Schedule" program 152-58
FOR 28, 42-44, 173
formatting 8, 9, 18-23
FOR-NEXT loop 28, 42-44
functions 121-30
combined 129, 130
graphing 127-30
numeric 124-26
string 121-24
GET 84, 85
GOSUB 44, 45, 79, 121
GOTO 41, 42
graphics 89-101
"Grid" program 150, 151
"History Trivia-Ontario" program 136, 137
"Homework Helper-Factors" program 143-45
IF 46
IF-THEN 46, 47
inflection 115
initializing a disk. See formatting
INKEY\$ 34-36, 152, 166
INPUT 33-36
input prompt 33
INSTR 123
INTeger 27, 142
interactive programming 33
INT(x) 124
Kickstart disk 4
labels 6
"Language" program 117
LEFT\$ 123
LEN 123, 124
LET 63
LINE 90, 91
line
drawing 89-91
logical 6
numbering 6
LIST 5
LOAD 9, 10
"Loan Payments" program 179
LOCATE 20
"Locating Points" program 147-49
LOG(x) 124
"Math Competency" program 50-56
memory, expanded 3
memory locations 59
MENU 79, 80
MENU RESET 79
MID\$ 123
mode 115
mouse 83-85

MOUSE(n) 83
MOUSE OFF 83
MOUSE ON 83
MOUSE STOP 83
"Multiple-Choice Test" program 139-41
music 105-12
NEW 6
NEXT 28, 42-44, 173
"Notes" program 109-12
OBJECT 99-101
OBJECT.AX 100
OBJECT.AY 100
OBJECT.CLIP 100
OBJECT.CLOSE 100
OBJECT.HIT 101
OBJECT.OFF 101
OBJECT.PLANES 101
OBJECT.PRIORITY 101
OBJECT.STOP 101
ON-GOSUB 47
ON-GOTO 47
ON MENU 79
ON MOUSE-GOSUB 83
OPEN 99
OPTION BASE 63
PAINT 93
PALETTE 96-98
PATTERN 93-96
phonemes 1216
pitch 115
pixels 89
PRINT 17-23, 121
PRINT USING 21-23
programs 7
drill 28, 29, 133-36
multiple-choice test 137-41
question-and-answer quiz 136, 137
PSET 166
PUT 84, 85
RANDOMIZE 27, 28
random numbers 27-29
rate 115
READ 63-67, 70
REM 5
reserved word 7
RESTORE 65-67, 174
RIGHT\$ 123
RND 27
"Roman Numerals" program 36-37
RUN 5, 121
SAVE 9, 10
SAY TRANSLATE\$ 116
seed 27
SGN(x) 125
SIN(x) 124, 128
sorting 161-64
bubble sort 161
maximum 162
minimum 162
quick 163
shell sort 162
simple interchange sort 161
SOUND 105-09
SPC 19
speech 115-17
"Spelling Flash Cards" program 168-69
sprites 99-101
SQR(x) 125
starting the system 3
statement 6
"States and Capitals" program 183-88
STEP 43
STOP 5
stopping the program 42, 91
STRING\$ 19, 124
subroutines 44,45
SWAP 161
TAB 19
TAN(x) 124
THEN 46
TIMER 28, 165
tuning 115
"Type1" program 189-91
typing in programs 10,11
VAL 121
variable 6
numeric 7
string 7
voice 115
volume 115
WAVE 112-14
WIDTH 23
WINDOW 80-82
WINDOW CLOSE 81
WINDOW OUTPUT 81
Workbench disk 4, 115

To order your copy of Elementary Amiga BASIC Disk, call our toll-free US order line: 1-800-346-6767 (in NY 212-8878525) or send your prepaid order to:

Elementary Amiga BASIC Disk COMPUTEI Publications
P.O. Box 5038
F.D.R. Station

New York, NY 10150
Send $\qquad$ copies of 128 LADS Disk at $\$ 15.95$ per copy.

All orders must be prepaid (check, charge, or money order). NC residents add $5 \%$ sales tax. NY residents add $8.25 \%$ sales tax.

Subtotal \$ $\qquad$

Shipping and Handling: $\$ 2.00 /$ disk $\$$ $\qquad$

Sales tax (if applicable) \$ $\qquad$

Total payment enclosed \$ $\qquad$
$\square$ Payment enclosed
$\square$ Charge $\square$ Visa $\square$ MasterCard $\square$ American Express

Acct. No. $\qquad$ Exp. Date (Required)

Name $\qquad$

Address $\qquad$
City $\qquad$ State $\qquad$ Zip $\qquad$
Please allow 4-5 weeks for delivery.
$\square$
B
$\square$
$\square$
$\square$

3
$\square$
17
$\square$
$\square$


More than just a programmer's manual, Elementary Amiga BASIC is a complete primer in the fundamentals of BASIC programming on the Amiga. Commands and techniques are demonstrated with plenty of practical example programs you can type in and use, or modify to meet your own needs.

All the main features of this powerful 16 -bit computer are explored here, including how to:

- Create your own screens and windows
- Design and display menus
- Compose and play music
- Format and display text
- Create colorful graphics
- Produce a variety of sound effects
- Manipulate sprites and animated objects
- Program the computer to speak in different voices and ac-cents-even to speak a foreign language.

Whether you are just starting in programming or have worked with BASIC on another computer, you will find all the commands, statements, and techniques you will need for effective programming on the Amiga.


[^0]:    LOAD "DF0:NAME"

[^1]:    5 RANDOMIZE

